



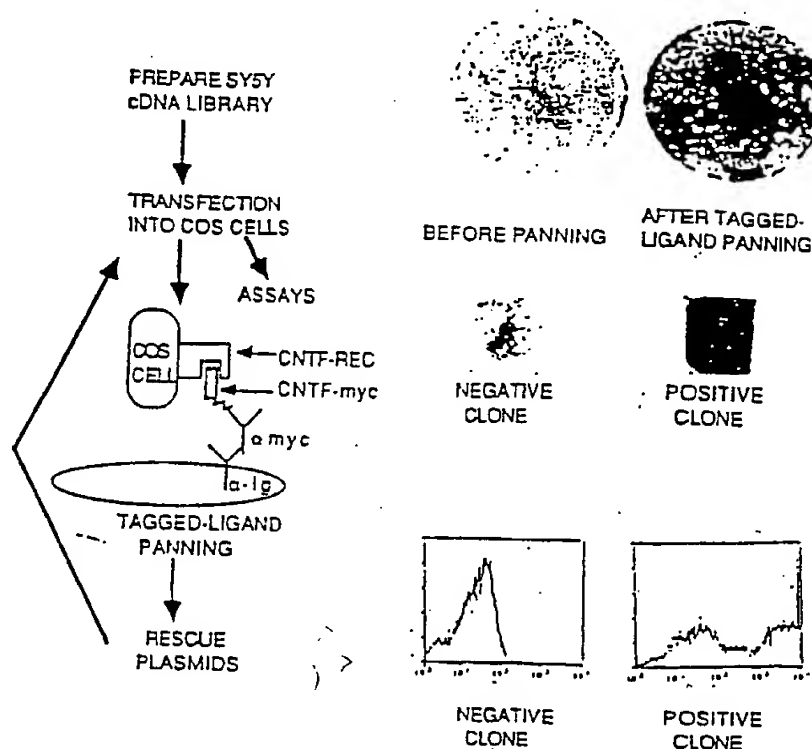
## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 5 : <b>C12Q 1/68, G01N 33/53</b>		<b>A1</b>	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 91/19009</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 12 December 1991 (12.12.91)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US91/03896		(74) Agent: MISROCK, S., Leslie; Pennie & Edmonds, 1155 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10036 (US).	
(22) International Filing Date: 3 June 1991 (03.06.91)			
(30) Priority data: 532,285 1 June 1990 (01.06.90) US 676,647 28 March 1991 (28.03.91) US 700,677 15 May 1991 (15.05.91) US		(81) Designated States: AT (European patent), AU, BE (European patent), CA, CH (European patent), DE (European patent), DK (European patent), ES (European patent), FI, FR (European patent), GB (European patent), GR (European patent), HU, IT (European patent), JP, KR, LU (European patent), NL (European patent), NO, SE (European patent), SU.	
(71) Applicant: REGENERON PHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; 777 Old Saw Mill River Road, Tarrytown, NY 10591 (US).		Published With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.	
(72) Inventors: DAVIS, Samuel ; 332 West 88th Street, Apt. B2, New York, NY 10024 (US). SQUINTO, Stephen, P. ; 281 Birch Lane, Ivington, NY 10533 (US). FURTH, Mark, E. ; 54 Highbrook Avenue, Pelham, NY 10803 (US). YANCOPOULOS, George, D. ; 428 Sleepy Hollow Road, Briarcliff Manor, NY 10510 (US).			

(54) Title: THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

## (57) Abstract

The present invention relates to the ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF) receptor, and provides for CNTF receptor nucleic acid and amino acid sequences. It also relates to (i) assay systems for detecting CNTF activity; (ii) experimental model systems for studying the physiologic role of CNTF; (iii) diagnostic techniques for identifying CNTF-related neurologic conditions; (iv) therapeutic techniques for the treatment of CNTF-related neurologic and muscular conditions, and (v) methods for identifying molecules homologous to CNTF and CNTFR.



**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	ES	Spain	MG	Madagascar
AU	Australia	FI	Finland	ML	Mali
BB	Barbados	FR	France	MN	Mongolia
BE	Belgium	GA	Gabon	MR	Mauritania
BF	Burkina Faso	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
BG	Bulgaria	GN	Guinea	NL	Netherlands
BJ	Benin	GR	Greece	NO	Norway
BR	Brazil	HU	Hungary	PL	Poland
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	RO	Romania
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KR	Republic of Korea	SN	Senegal
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SU	Soviet Union
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TC	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	US	United States of America
DK	Denmark				

## THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

### 1. INTRODUCTION

The present invention relates to the ciliary  
5 neurotrophic factor receptor (CNTFR), and provides for CNTF  
receptor encoding nucleic acid and amino acid sequences.  
It also relates to (i) assay systems for detecting CNTF  
activity; (ii) experimental model systems for studying the  
physiological role of CNTF; (iii) diagnostic techniques for  
10 identifying CNTF-related neurologic conditions; (iv)  
therapeutic techniques for the treatment of CNTF-related  
neurologic conditions, and (v) methods for identifying  
molecules homologous to CNTFR.

### 2. BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

#### 2.1. CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR

Ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF) is a protein that  
is specifically required for the survival of embryonic  
chick ciliary ganglion neurons in vitro (Manthorpe et al.,  
20 1980, J. Neurochem. 34:69-75). The ciliary ganglion is  
anatomically located within the orbital cavity, lying  
between the lateral rectus and the sheath of the optic  
nerve; it receives parasympathetic nerve fibers from the  
oculomotor nerve which innervate the ciliary muscle and  
25 sphincter pupillae.

Ciliary ganglion neurons have been found to be among  
the neuronal populations which exhibit defined periods of  
cell death. In the chick ciliary ganglion, half of the  
neurons present at embryonic day 8 (E8) have been observed  
30 to die before E14 (Landmesser and Pilar, 1974, J. Physiol.  
241:737-749). During this same time period, ciliary  
ganglion neurons are forming connections with their target  
tissues, namely, the ciliary body and the choroid coat of  
the eye. Landmesser and Pilar (1974, J. Physiol. 241:751-  
35

736) observed that removal of an eye prior to the period of cell death results in the complete loss of ciliary ganglion neurons in the ipsilateral ganglion. Conversely, Narayanan and Narayanan (1978, J. Embryol. Ex. Morphol. 44:53-70) observed that, by implanting an additional eye primordium and thereby increasing the amount of available target tissue, ciliary ganglion neuronal cell death may be decreased. These results are consistent with the existence of a target derived neurotrophic factor which acts upon ciliary ganglion neurons.

In culture, ciliary ganglion (CG) neurons have been found to require a factor or factors for survival. Ciliary neurotrophic factor(s) (CNTF) activity has been identified in chick muscle cell conditioned media (Helfand et al., 1976, Dev. Biol. 50:541-547; Helfand et al., 1978, Exp. Cell Res. 113:39-45; Bennett and Nurcome, 1979, Brain Res. 173:543-548; Nishi and Berg, 1979, Nature 277:232-234; Varon et al., 1979, Brain Res. 173:29-45), in muscle extracts (McLennan and Hendry, 1978, Neurosci. Lett. 10:269-273); in chick embryo extract (Varon et al., 1979, Brain Res. 173:29-45; Tuttle et al., 1980, Brain Res. 183:161-180), and in medium conditioned by heart cells (for discussion, see also Adler et al., 1979, Science 204:1434-1436 and Barbin et al., 1984, J. Neurochem. 43:1468-1478).

Adler et al. (1979, Science 204:1434-1436) used an assay system based on microwell cultures of CG neurons to demonstrate that a very rich source of CNTF was found in the intraocular target tissues the CG neurons innervate. Out of 8000 trophic units (TU) present in a twelve-day embryo, 2500 TU were found present in eye tissue; activity appeared to be localized in a fraction containing the ciliary body and choroid coat.

Subsequently, Barbin et al. (1984, J. Neurochem. 43:1468-1478) reported a procedure for enriching CNTF from chick embryo eye tissue. CNTF activity was also found to



be associated with non-CG tissues, including rat sciatic nerve (Williams et al., 1984, Int. J. Develop. Neurosci 218:460-470). Manthorpe et al. (1986, Brain Res. 367:282-286) reported partial purification of mammalian CNTF activity from extracts of adult rat sciatic nerve using a  
5 fractionation procedure similar to that employed for isolating CNTF activity from chick eye. In addition, Watters and Hendry (1987, J. Neurochem. 49:705-713) described a method for enriching CNTF activity  
10 approximately 20,000-fold from bovine cardiac tissue under non-denaturing conditions using heparin-affinity chromatography. CNTF activity has also been identified in damaged brain tissue (Manthorpe et al., 1983, Brain Res. 267:47-56; Nieto-Sampedro et al., 1983, J. Neurosci. 3:2219-2229).  
15 Carnow et al. (1985, J. Neurosci. 5: 1965-1971) and Rudge et al., (1987, Develop. Brain Res. 32:103-110) describe methods for identifying CNTF-like activity from Western blots of tissue extracts and then identifying  
20 protein bands containing CNTF activity by inoculating the nitrocellulose strips in a culture dish with CG neurons and identifying areas of cell survival using vital dyes. Using this method, Carnow et al. (1985, J. Neurosci. 5:1965-1971) observed that adult rat sciatic nerve and brain-derived  
25 CNTF activities appear to exhibit a different size (24kD) than chick CNTF (20.4 kD).

Recently, CNTF has been cloned and synthesized in bacterial expression systems, as described in U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor," filed August 20, 1990 by Sendtner et  
30 al. incorporated by reference in its entirety herein. Using recombinant probes, CNTF-mRNA in tissues of adult rat appeared to be about 1.2 kb in size. Rat brain CNTF was cloned and found to be encoded by a mRNA having a short 5' untranslated region of 77 bp and an open reading frame of  
35

600 bp, predicting a protein of about 200 amino acids (Stockli et al., 1989, Nature 342:920-923). Human CNTF was also cloned and sequenced (U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor," filed August 20, 1990 by Sendtner et al.); its coding sequences were substantially conserved relative to rat sequences, whereas noncoding sequences were less conserved.

## 2.2. FUNCTIONAL PROPERTIES OF CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR

A number of biological effects have been ascribed to CNTF. As discussed above, CNTF was originally described as an activity which supported the survival of neurons of the E8 chick ciliary ganglion, a component of the parasympathetic nervous system. A description of other biological properties of preparations known to contain CNTF activity follows:

Saadat et al. (1989, J. Cell Biol. 108:1807-1816) observed that their most highly purified preparation of rat sciatic nerve CNTF induced cholinergic differentiation of rat sympathetic neurons in culture. Also, Hoffman (1988, J. Neurochem. 51:109-113) found that CNTF activity derived from chick eye increased the level of choline-O-acetyltransferase activity in retinal monolayer cultures.

Hughes et al. (1988, Nature 335:70-73) studied a population of bipotential glial progenitor cells in cultures derived from the perinatal rat optic nerve and brain; these progenitor cells have been shown to give rise to, first, oligodendrocytes and then, to type 2 astrocytes. Under the culture conditions used, oligodendrocyte differentiation appeared to occur directly from an oligodendrocyte-type 2-astrocyte (O-2A) progenitor cell, whereas type 2 astrocyte differentiation appears to require the presence of an inducing protein similar or identical to CNTF (see also Anderson, 1989, Trends Neurosci. 12:83-85).

35

Heymanns and Unsicker (1979, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 4:7758-7762) observed that high-speed supernatants of neuroblastoma cell extracts produced effects similar to those associated with CNTF activity from chick eye or rat sciatic nerve; the presence of a protein similar but not  
5 identical to CNTF (by molecular weight) was indicated.

Ebendal (1987, J. Neurosci. Res. 17:19-24) looked for CNTF-like activity in a variety of rat and chicken tissues. He observed CNTF-like activity among a fairly wide range of  
10 rat, but not in chicken tissues; rat liver, spleen T cells, and submandibular gland cells were found to be associated with low levels of CG survival promoting activity, whereas heart, brain, and skeletal muscle tissues were associated with higher survival promoting activity. Among tissues  
15 tested the highest CNTF-like activity was observed to be associated with rat kidney.

While the above studies have shown that many tissue and cell extracts contain activities which support the survival of neuronal populations which are also responsive to CNTF, (i.e. they support the survival of E8 chick  
20 ciliary ganglion neurons in a tissue culture bioassay), it cannot be assumed that a single or identical protein is responsible for these activities. As shown for the family of fibroblast growth factors (FGFs) (Dionne et al. , 1990, EMBO J. 9:2685-2692), for example, a number of distinct  
25 polypeptides or proteins possess identical biological activity in a single bioassay.

The neuronal specificity of chick eye and rat sciatic nerve CNTF were initially found to have some overlap with neuronal populations responsive to NGF. Although CNTF was  
30 observed to have some overlapping neuronal specificity with NGF, distinguishing characteristics between them became most apparent in studies of the roles of CNTF and NGF in populations of developing neurons (Skaper and Varon, 1986, Brain Res. 389:39-46). In addition to their differing  
35

roles in development, CNTF may also be distinguished from NGF by molecular weight, isoelectric point, inability to be inactivated by antibodies to NGF, and by CNTF's ability to support the in vitro survival of CGF neurons (Barbin et al., 1984, J. Neurochem. 43:1468-1478). Lin et al. (1989),  
5 Science 246:1023-1026 have reported that CNTF is without sequence homology to any previously reported proteins. Sendtner et al. (U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor," filed August 20, 1990) observed that recombinant CNTF promoted  
10 survival of mediodorsal and ventral spinal cord neurons, and also that purified rat sciatic nerve CNTF appeared to prevent cell death of motoneurons in lesioned facial nerve (VIIth cranial nerve) of newborn rat (Sendtner et al., 1990, Nature 345:440-441).

15 The cloning and expression of CNTF using recombinant DNA technology has led to the discovery of a number of CNTF activities.

### 2.3. GROWTH FACTOR RECEPTORS

A number of receptors which mediate binding and  
20 response to protein factors have been characterized and molecularly cloned over the last few years, including receptors for insulin, for platelet derived growth factor, for epidermal growth factor and its relatives, for the fibroblast growth factors, and for various interleukins and  
25 hematopoietic growth factors. Recent data reveal that certain receptors can bind to multiple (related) growth factors, while in other cases the same factor can act on multiple (related) receptors (e.g. Lupu et al., 1990, Science 249:1552-1555; Dionne et al., 1990, EMBO J.  
30 9:2685-2692; Miki et al., 1991, Science 251:72-75). Most receptors that bind protein factors can broadly be characterized as having extracellular portions responsible for specifically binding the factor, transmembrane regions which span the membrane, and intracellular domains that are  
35

often involved in initiating signal transduction upon binding of the protein factor to the receptor's extracellular portion. Interestingly, although many receptors are comprised of a single polypeptide chain, other receptors apparently require (at least) two separate subunits in order to bind to their factor with high-affinity and to allow functional response following binding (e.g. Hempstead et al., 1989, Science 243:373-375; Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). The extracellular and intracellular portions of a given receptor often share common structural motifs with the corresponding regions of other receptors, suggesting evolutionary and functional relationships between different receptors. These relationships can often be quite distant and may simply reflect the repeated use of certain general domain structures. For example, a variety of different receptors that bind unrelated factors make use of "immunoglobulin" domains in their extracellular portions, while other receptors utilize "cytokine receptor" domains in their factor-binding regions (e.g. Akira et al., 1990, The FASEB J. 4:2860-2867). A large number of receptors with distinct extracellular binding domains (which thus bind different factors) contain related intracytoplasmic domains encoding tyrosine-specific protein kinases that are activated in response to factor binding (e.g. Ullrich and Schlessinger, 1990, Cell 61:203-212). The mechanisms by which factor-binding "activates" the signal transduction process is poorly understood, even in the case of receptor tyrosine kinases. For other receptors, in which the intracellular domain encodes a domain of unknown function or in which the binding component associates with a second protein of unknown function (e.g. Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157), activation of signal transduction remains even more mysterious.

### 3. SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to CNTF receptor (CNTFR) genes and proteins. It is based, in part, on the cloning and characterization of the human CNTFR gene and its expression in transfected COS cells.

5       The present invention provides for nucleic acid sequences which encode the CNTFR, as well as fragments derived therefrom. It also provides for substantially purified CNTFR protein, and for peptide fragments thereof.

10       In a further aspect of the invention, CNTFR probes, including nucleic acid as well as antibody probes, may be used to identify CNTFR-related molecules. For example, the present invention provides for such molecules which form a complex with CNTFR and thereby participate in CNTFR function. As another example, the present invention  
15       provides for receptor molecules which are homologous or cross-reactive antigenically, but not identical to CNTFR. These particular embodiments are based on the discovery that the CNTFR bears homology to other biologically relevant molecules, including, most particularly, the IL-6  
20       receptor, but also the PDGF receptor, the CSF-1 receptor, the prolactin receptor, the IL-2 and IL-4 receptors, the GM-CSF granulocyte macrophage colony stimulation factor receptor, pregnancy-specific alpha 1-beta glycoprotein, and carcinoembryonic antigen, a tumor marker.

25       The present invention also provides for assay systems for detecting CNTF activity, comprising cells which express high levels of CNTFR, and which are therefore extremely sensitive to even very low concentrations of CNTF or CNTF-like molecules.

30       In addition, the present invention provides for experimental model systems for studying the physiological role of CNTF. Such systems include animal models, such as (i) animals exposed to circulating CNTFR peptides which compete with cellular receptor for CNTF binding and thereby  
35

produce a CNTF-depleted condition, (ii) animals immunized with CNTFR; (iii) transgenic animals which express high levels of CNTFR and therefore are hypersensitive to CNTF; and (iv) animals derived using embryonic stem cell technology in which the endogenous CNTFR genes were deleted  
5 from the genome.

In yet further embodiments of the invention, CNTFR probes may be used to identify cells and tissues which are responsive to CNTF in normal or diseased states. For example, a patient suffering from a CNTF-related disorder  
10 may exhibit an aberrancy of CNTFR expression.

In addition, the CNTFR genes and proteins of the invention may be used therapeutically. For example, and not by way of limitation, a circulating CNTFR may be used to deplete CNTF levels in areas of trauma to the central  
15 nervous system. Alternatively, a recombinant CNTFR gene may be inserted in tissues which would benefit from increased sensitivity to CNTF, such as motorneurons in patients suffering from amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.

20

#### 4. DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

Figure 1. A. Schematic diagram of expression cloning using tagged ligand binding strategy. B. Secondary iodinated antibody assay showed that in contrast to COS cells transfected with the original cDNA library, many COS  
25 cells transfected with DNA obtained after one round of panning expressed CNTF-binding sites (radioautograph done on 60 mm plate of transfected COS cells; each black dot represents a single transfected COS cell expressing a CNTF-binding site). C. The same assay as  
30 described in (B), but where COS cells had been transfected with a non-CNTFR encoding plasmid (negative clone) or a CNTFR encoding plasmid (positive clone). Only small sections of each plate are shown. D.  
35 Results of fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS)

analysis of COS cells transfected with the negative clone or the positive clone of (C).

Figure 2. Nucleic acid sequence (SEQ ID NO:1) of CNTFR-encoding cDNA and deduced amino acid sequence (SEQ ID NO:2).

5 Figure 3. Alignment of the human CNTFR showing homologies in the immunoglobulin-like domain and the cytokine receptor-like domain. Numbers on the left indicate the amino acid number starting from the first methionine. Identical residues and conserved substitutions are  
10 marked by solid boxes. Gaps are introduced to maximize homology. IL-6 = interleukin 6; CEA = carcinoembryonic antigen, PDGF = platelet derived growth factor, CSF-1 = colony stimulating factor 1; alpha 1- $\beta$  GP = alpha 1  $\beta$  glycoprotein, PRL = prolactin, EPO = erythropoietin;  
15 IL-2 = interleukin 2; IL-4 = interleukin 4, GM-CSF = granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor.

Figure 4. Structural relationships between the CNTFR and other related receptors. The human IL-6 receptor and CNTFR have an immunoglobulin domain fused to the N-  
20 terminus of the proposed factor binding domain. A short acidic tether (zig zag line) connects the globular immunoglobulin and proposed factor binding domain. A proposed protein similar to gp130 is shown in association with the CNTFR, as discussed in the  
25 text. HuGRHR - human growth hormone receptor; RbPRLR - rabbit prolactin receptor; MoEPOR - mouse erythropoietin receptor; HuIL2R $\beta$  - human interleukin-2 receptor  $\beta$ -chain; HuIL6R - human interleukin 6  
30 receptor; HuCNTFR - human ciliary derived neurotrophic factor receptor; C - cysteine; X- unknown amino acid; W - tryptophan; S - serine; F - phenylalanine.

Figure 5. Tissue localization of CNTFR message. RNA was prepared from the indicated tissues of rat as described in section 8.1. DNA fragments of CNTFR were derived  
35



from expression constructs containing these genes in pCMX as described in section 8.1. Tissues: cerebellum (CB); hindbrain (HB); midbrain (MB); thalamus (TH/HYP); striatum (STRI); hippocampus B (HIP B); hippocampus A (HIP A); cortex (CORT); olfactory bulb (OLF); adult brain (AD BR); skin (SK); heart (HRT); muscle (MUS), lung (LUNG); intestine (INT); kidney (KID); liver (LIV); spleen (SPL); thymus (THY); E17 liver (E17 LIV).

Figure 6. pCMX with hCNTF-R gene insert. Construction of pCMX in copending application.

Figure 7. Northern blot analysis of CNTF receptor expression in skeletal muscle. 10  $\mu$ g of total RNA was run in each lane. Lane 1, mouse myoblast cell line C2C12 mb; lane 2, mouse myotube cell line C2C12 mt; lane 3, rat myotube cell line H9C2 mt; lane 4, rat myotube cell line L6 mt; lane 5, rat soleus muscle; lane 6, rat extensor digitorum longus (EDL) muscle; lane 7, denervated skeletal muscle; lane 8, purified human myotubes; lane 9, skeletal muscle (this RNA sample was degraded); lane 10, adult rat cerebellum; lane 11, sham-operated soleus muscle; lane 12, 72 hour denervated rat soleus muscle; lane 13, sham-operated EDL muscle; lane 14, 72 hour denervated EDL muscle.

Figure 8. Anatomical diagram of the right hindlimb subjected to denervation surgery.

Figure 9. UNOP = unoperated soleus muscles from animal group 1 (Table IV); solid bar represents right side and stippled bar represents left side; NONE = lesioned (denervated, right side) and control (sham-operated, left side) soleus muscles without any injection, from animal group 2; ALB = lesioned (right) and control (left) soleus muscles treated with PBS/BSA (SC) from animal group 6; CNTF=lesioned (right) and control (left) soleus muscles treated with CNTF/BSA (SC) from

animal group 5. Solid bars: lesioned; stippled bars: control.

## 5. DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

For purposes of clarity of disclosure, and not by way of limitation, the detailed description of the invention will be divided into the following subsections:

- (i) cloning of the CNTF receptor;
- (ii) nucleic acid encoding the CNTF receptor;
- (iii) CNTFR peptides;
- (iv) expression of CNTF receptor;
- (v) identification of molecules related to the CNTF receptor; and
- (vi) utility of the invention.

### 5.1. CLONING OF THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

The present invention enables the cloning of the CNTF receptor (CNTFR) by providing a method for selecting target cells which express CNTFR. By providing a means of enriching for CNTFR encoding sequences, the present invention enables the purification of CNTFR protein and the direct cloning of CNTFR-encoding DNA.

For example, CNTFR-bearing target cells may be selected, and CNTFR protein may be purified using methods known to one skilled in the art for the purification of a receptor molecule. For example, and not by way of limitation, CNTF or CNTF attached to a detectable molecule, as described in section 5.6.3, *infra*, in which the tag may be, for example, a radiolabel, antigenic determinant, or antibody, to name a few, (CNTF/tag) may be reversibly crosslinked to target cells, and membrane associated proteins from said target cells may be subjected to purification methods. Such purification methods may include SDS-PAGE, followed by detection of the position of

35

CNTF or CNTF/tag in the gel; for example, radiolabeled CNTF could be used, and, crosslinked to its receptor, may be visualized in the gel by autoradiography. Alternatively, anti-CNTF or anti-tag antibody could be used in the Western blot technique to identify the position of the  
5 CNTF/receptor complex in such gels. Preparative gel electrophoresis could be used to isolate sufficient amounts of protein to enable amino acid sequencing of peptide fragments of the receptor, or to enable production of anti-CNTFR antibody which could be used to purify CNTFR  
10 molecules from target cell extracts. Amino acid sequence obtained from purified CNTFR may be used to design degenerate oligonucleotide probes which may be used to identify CNTFR encoding cloned nucleic acid in a genomic DNA library or, preferably, in a cDNA library constructed  
15 from CNTFR producing target cells.

Alternatively, the CNTFR may be cloned by subtractive hybridization methods, in which mRNA may be prepared from target cells which express CNTFR, and then non-CNTFR encoding sequences may be subtracted by hybridizing the  
20 mRNA (or cDNA produced therefrom) with mRNA or cDNA derived from cells such as neuronal cells which do not express the CNTFR. The nucleic acid remaining after subtraction is likely to be enriched in CNTFR-encoding sequences.

Nucleic acid prepared, preferably, from target cells  
25 enriched in CNTFR encoding sequences due to endogenous expression of CNTFR and/or due to subtraction techniques discussed supra, may also be used in expression cloning techniques to directly clone the CNTFR. For example, and not by way of limitation, total genomic DNA from target  
30 cells which express CNTFR may be prepared and then transfected into a cell line which does not express CNTFR and which is preferably derived from a different species from the target cell species (for example, DNA from a human CNTFR-encoding cell may be transfected into a mouse cell,  
35

such as an L cell). Although a relatively small number of transfected cells may express CNTFR, such cells may be identified by rosetting techniques or immunofluorescence techniques as described in section 5.6.3, infra and may be isolated, for example, by fluorescence-activated cell  
5 sorting or using antibody-coupled magnetic beads or "panning" techniques, known to one skilled in the art. The CNTFR encoding DNA may be cloned from receptor-producing transfectants by producing a genomic library from the transfectants and then isolating and propagating clones  
10 that contain either sequences conforming to CNTFR amino acid sequence or sequences homologous to species specific genetic elements; for example, human DNA may be identified via Alu repeated sequences, which are distributed at high frequency throughout the human genome. For example, and  
15 not by way of limitation, cultured non-human cells comprising transfected human DNA encoding the CNTFR and which express human CNTFR may be selected, propagated, and then genomic DNA prepared from these cells may be used to transfect cultured non-human cells, and CNTFR expressing  
20 cells may be selected. This process may be repeated; its purpose is to decrease, by each transfection step, the amount of human DNA present in CNTFR encoding cells. Accordingly, when the genomic DNA of transfected, human CNTFR expressing cells is cloned to generate a library,  
25 clones which include human DNA (and are identified, for example, by screening for distinctly human sequence elements) are more likely to comprise CNTFR-encoding sequences when repeated transfections have been performed.

RNA from a CNTFR expressing cell line or tissue  
30 source, or a cDNA expression library obtained from such a source may be introduced in pools into *Xenopus* oocytes by direct injection; oocytes injected with pools encoding the CNTFR may be identified by assaying for functional responses (e.g., ion fluxes) that may be induced by exposing  
35

such oocytes to CNTF, or alternatively by detecting the presence of CNTF-binding sites on the surface of such injected oocytes. Repetitively dividing positive pools into smaller and smaller pools may lead to the identification of individual clones encoding the CNTFR.

5 Alternatively, a cDNA expression library may be derived from CNTFR bearing target cells and then utilized in transient expression assays. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, said expression library may incorporate the SV40 origin of replication and transient expression  
10 assays may be performed using COS cells. CNTFR-expressing transfectants may be identified as set forth above, and CNTFR encoding DNA may be retrieved using standard methods. The nucleic acid sequence encoding the CNTFR may then be propagated and/or utilized in expression systems using  
15 methods substantially as set forth for nucleic acid encoding CNTF, as described in U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor," filed August 20, 1990 by Sendtner et al.

In a specific embodiment of the invention, exemplified  
20 in Section 6, infra, (and see Figure 1) expression cloning of the CNTFR may be performed as follows. A cDNA library may be prepared from a cell line or tissue which expresses CNTFR such as SH-SY5Y, such that the cDNA is inserted into an expression vector. This library may then be transfected  
25 into a suitable cell line, such as COS M5 cells, using, for example, a DEAE/chloroquine transfection protocol. Several days after transfection, the cells may be detached from their culture dishes and subjected to the Aruffo/Seed panning procedure (Seed and Aruffo, 1987, Proc. Natl. Acad.  
30 Sci. U.S.A. 84:365-3369), with the following modifications:

- (i) instead of incubating the transfected cells with anti-receptor antibodies, the cells may be incubated first with tagged CNTF (for example, CNTF myc) on ice for about 30 minutes,

centrifuged through phosphate buffered saline (PBS)/2% Ficoll to remove excess ligand, and then incubated with anti-tag antibody (for example, the anti-myc antibody 9E10) for about 30 minutes on ice.

- 5 (ii) the cells may then be spun through PBS/2% Ficoll and then "panned" on plates coated with antibody that recognizes the anti-tag antibody (for example, if the anti-tag antibody is 9E10, anti-mouse antibody.

10 Then, after washing nonadherent cells from the plates, Hirt supernatants may be prepared from the adherent cells, and plasmid DNA may be precipitated in the presence of about 10-20 $\mu$ g of tRNA. The resulting plasmid DNA may then be introduced into suitable bacteria (for example DH10 B  
15 bacteria) by standard techniques, including, but not limited to, electroporation. The cultures grown from transformed bacteria may then be used to prepare plasmid DNA for another round of eukaryotic transfection and panning. After this second transfection, panning and  
20 plasmid DNA preparation and transformation, the bacterial transformants may be plated out on selective media, individual colonies may be picked and used for the preparation of plasmid DNA, and DNA prepared from a number of such clones may be used individually for COS cell  
25 transfection. Alternatively, more rounds of enrichment may be necessary before individual colonies are tested. Resulting COS cells expressing CNTF binding sites may be identified by a number of techniques, including, but not limited to, indirect binding assays using radioactively  
30 labeled or fluorescently labeled indicator antibodies. An example of a CNTFR-encoding nucleic acid is comprised in pCMX-hCNTFR (I2), Figure 6, which has been deposited with the NRRL and assigned accession number B-18789, and which is described in copending United States patent application  
35

Serial No. entitled "Mammalian Expression Vector" by Davis and Yancopoulos. Clones identified in this manner may then be analyzed by restriction fragment mapping and nucleic acid sequencing using standard techniques. Fragments of the CNTFR-encoding cDNA may then be used to identify  
5 genomic DNA sequences which comprise the CNTFR gene, for example, from a genomic DNA library using standard hybridization techniques.

Once obtained, a CNTFR gene may be cloned or subcloned using any method known in the art. A large number of  
10 vector-host systems known in the art may be used. Possible vectors include, but are not limited to, cosmids, plasmids or modified viruses, but the vector system must be compatible with the host cell used. Such vectors include, but are not limited to, bacteriophages such as lambda  
15 derivatives, or plasmids such as pBR322, pUC, or Bluescript® (Stratagene) plasmid derivatives. Recombinant molecules can be introduced into host cells via transformation, transfection, infection, electroporation, etc.

20 The CNTFR gene may be inserted into a cloning vector which can be used to transform, transfect, or infect appropriate host cells so that many copies of the gene sequences are generated. This can be accomplished by ligating the DNA fragment into a cloning vector which has  
25 complementary cohesive termini. However, if the complementary restriction sites used to fragment the DNA are not present in the cloning vector, the ends of the DNA molecules may be enzymatically modified. It may prove advantageous to incorporate restriction endonuclease  
30 cleavage sites into the oligonucleotide primers used in polymerase chain reaction to facilitate insertion into vectors. Alternatively, any site desired may be produced by ligating nucleotide sequences (linkers) onto the DNA termini; these ligated linkers may comprise specific  
35

chemically synthesized oligonucleotides encoding restriction endonuclease recognition sequences. In an alternative method, the cleaved vector and CNTFR gene may be modified by homopolymeric tailing.

5 In specific embodiments, transformation of host cells with recombinant DNA molecules that incorporate an isolated CNTFR gene, cDNA, or synthesized DNA sequence enables generation of multiple copies of the gene. Thus, the gene may be obtained in large quantities by growing transformants, isolating the recombinant DNA molecules from  
10 the transformants and, when necessary, retrieving the inserted gene from the isolated recombinant DNA.

#### 5.2. NUCLEIC ACID ENCODING CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

15 Using the methods detailed supra and in Example Section 6, infra, the following nucleic acid sequence was determined, and the corresponding amino acid sequence deduced. The sequence of the human CNTFR is depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1). This sequence, its functional  
20 equivalent, or fragments of this sequence at least 6 nucleotides in length may be used in accordance with the invention. Additionally, the invention relates to CNTFR genes isolated from porcine, ovine, bovine, feline, avian, equine, or canine, as well as primate sources and any other  
25 species in which CNTF activity exists. Subsequences comprising hybridizable portions of the CNTFR sequence have use, e.g., in nucleic acid hybridization assays, Southern and Northern blot analyses, etc.

For example, the nucleic acid sequence depicted in  
30 Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1) can be altered by mutations such as substitutions, additions or deletions that provide for sequences encoding functionally equivalent molecules. According to the present invention, a molecule is functionally equivalent or active compared with a molecule

35



having the sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) if it has the ability to bind CNTF, but it does not necessarily bind CNTF with an affinity comparable to that of natural CNTFR. Due to the degeneracy of nucleotide coding sequences, other DNA sequences which encode  
5 substantially the same amino acid sequence as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) may be used in the practice of the present invention. These include but are not limited to nucleotide sequences comprising all or portions of the CNTFR gene depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1) which is  
10 altered by the substitution of different codons that encode a functionally equivalent amino acid residue within the sequence, thus producing a silent change.

In addition, the recombinant CNTFR-encoding nucleic acid sequences of the invention may be engineered so as to  
15 modify processing or expression of CNTFR. For example, and not by way of limitation, the CNTFR gene may be combined with a promoter sequence and/or a ribosome binding site, or a signal sequence may be inserted upstream of CNTFR encoding sequences to permit secretion of CNTFR and thereby  
20 facilitate harvesting or bioavailability.

Additionally, a given CNTFR can be mutated in vitro or in vivo, to create and/or destroy translation, initiation, and/or termination sequences, or to create variations in coding regions and/or form new restriction endonuclease  
25 sites or destroy preexisting ones, to facilitate further in vitro modification. Any technique for mutagenesis known in the art can be used, including but not limited to, in vitro site-directed mutagenesis (Hutchinson, et al., 1978, J. Biol. Chem. 253:6551), use of TAB® linkers (Pharmacia),  
30 etc.

### 5.3. CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR PEPTIDES

The invention also provides for CNTFR proteins, fragments and derivatives thereof, having the amino acid sequence set forth in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) or its  
5 functional equivalents and for proteins homologous to such protein, such homology being of at least about 30 percent. The invention also provides fragments or derivatives of CNTFR proteins which comprise at least six amino acids, comprise an antigenic determinant(s), or which are  
10 functionally active. The CNTFR protein having the amino acid sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) has a molecular weight of approximately 42 kd.

CNTFR proteins, or fragments or derivatives thereof, of the invention include, but are not limited to, those  
15 containing, as a primary amino acid sequence, all or part of the amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 including altered sequences in which functionally equivalent amino acid residues are substituted for residues within the sequence resulting in a silent change. For  
20 example, one or more amino acid residues within the sequence can be substituted by another amino acid of a similar polarity which acts as a functional equivalent, resulting in a silent alteration. Substitutes for an amino acid within the sequence may be selected from other members  
25 of the class to which the amino acid belongs. For example, the nonpolar (hydrophobic) amino acids include alanine, leucine, isoleucine, valine, proline, phenylalanine, tryptophan and methionine. The polar neutral amino acids include glycine, serine, threonine, cysteine, tyrosine,  
30 asparagine, and glutamine. The positively charged (basic) amino acids include arginine, lysine and histidine. The negatively charged (acidic) amino acids include aspartic acid and glutamic acid. Also included within the scope of the invention are CNTFR proteins or fragments or

35

derivatives thereof which are differentially modified during or after translation, e.g., by phosphorylation, glycosylation, crosslinking, acylation, proteolytic cleavage, linkage to an antibody molecule, membrane molecule or other ligand, (Ferguson et al., 1988, Ann. Rev. Biochem. 57:285-320).

The CNTFR peptides of the invention may be prepared by recombinant nucleic acid expression techniques or by chemical synthesis using standard peptide synthesis techniques.

#### 5.4. EXPRESSION OF CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

In order to express recombinant CNTFR, the nucleotide sequence coding for a CNTFR protein, or a portion thereof, can be inserted into an appropriate expression vector, i.e., a vector which contains the necessary elements for the transcription and translation of the inserted protein-coding sequence. The necessary transcription and translation signals can also be supplied by the native CNTFR gene and/or its flanking regions. A variety of host-vector systems may be utilized to express the protein-coding sequence. These include but are not limited to mammalian cell systems infected with virus (e.g., vaccinia virus, adenovirus, etc.); insect cell systems infected with virus (e.g., baculovirus); microorganisms such as yeast containing yeast vectors, or bacteria transformed with bacteriophage DNA, plasmid DNA, or cosmid DNA. The expression elements of these vectors vary in their strengths and specificities. Depending on the host-vector system utilized, any one of a number of suitable transcription and translation elements may be used.

In a preferred specific embodiment of the invention, the CNTFR gene may be comprised in the pCMX expression

vector, as deposited with the NRRL and assigned accession no. B-18790.

Any of the methods previously described for the insertion of DNA fragments into a vector may be used to construct expression vectors containing a chimeric gene consisting of appropriate transcriptional/translational control signals and the protein coding sequences. These methods may include in vitro recombinant DNA and synthetic techniques and in vivo recombinations (genetic recombination). Expression of nucleic acid sequence encoding CNTFR protein or peptide fragment may be regulated by a second nucleic acid sequence so that CNTFR protein or peptide is expressed in a host transformed with the recombinant DNA molecule. For example, expression of CNTFR may be controlled by any promoter/enhancer element known in the art. Promoters which may be used to control CNTFR expression include, but are not limited to, the SV40 early promoter region (Bernoist and Chambon, 1981, Nature 290:304-310), the CMV promoter, the promoter contained in the 3' long terminal repeat of Rous sarcoma virus (Yamamoto, et al., 1980, Cell 22:787-797), the herpes thymidine kinase promoter (Wagner et al., 1981, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 78:144-1445), the regulatory sequences of the metallothionine gene (Brinster et al., 1982, Nature 296:39-42); prokaryotic expression vectors such as the  $\beta$ -lactamase promoter (Villa-Kamaroff, et al., 1978, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 75:3727-3731), or the tac promoter (DeBoer, et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:21-25), see also "Useful proteins from recombinant bacteria" in Scientific American, 1980, 242:74-94; promoter elements from yeast or other fungi such as the Gal 4 promoter, the ADC (alcohol dehydrogenase) promoter, PGK (phosphoglycerol kinase) promoter, alkaline phosphatase promoter, and the following animal transcriptional control regions, which exhibit tissue specificity and have been

utilized in transgenic animals: elastase I gene control region which is active in pancreatic acinar cells (Swift et al., 1984, Cell 38:639-646; Ornitz et al., 1986, Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. 50:399-409; MacDonald, 1987, Hepatology 7:425-515); insulin gene control region  
5 which is active in pancreatic beta cells (Hanahan, 1985, Nature 315:115-122), immunoglobulin gene control region which is active in lymphoid cells (Grosschedl et al., 1984, Cell 38:647-658; Adames et al., 1985, Nature 318:533-538; Alexander et al., 1987, Mol. Cell. Biol. 7:1436-1444),  
10 mouse mammary tumor virus control region which is active in testicular, breast, lymphoid and mast cells (Leder et al., 1986, Cell 45:485-495), albumin gene control region which is active in liver (Pinkert et al., 1987, Genes and Devel. 1:268-276), alpha-fetoprotein gene control region which is  
15 active in liver (Krumlauf et al., 1985, Mol. Cell. Biol. 5:1639-1648; Hammer et al., 1987, Science 235:53-58); alpha 1-antitrypsin gene control region which is active in the liver (Kelsey et al., 1987, Genes and Devel. 1:161-171), beta-globin gene control region which is active in myeloid  
20 cells (Mogram et al., 1985, Nature 315:338-340; Kollias et al., 1986, Cell 46:89-94); myelin basic protein gene control region which is active in oligodendrocyte cells in the brain (Readhead et al., 1987, Cell 48:703-712); myosin light chain-2 gene control region which is active in  
25 skeletal muscle (Sani, 1985, Nature 314:283-286), and gonadotropic releasing hormone gene control region which is active in the hypothalamus (Mason et al., 1986, Science 234:1372-1378).

Expression vectors containing CNTFR gene inserts can  
30 be identified by three general approaches: (a) DNA-DNA hybridization, (b) presence or absence of "marker" gene functions, and (c) expression of inserted sequences. In the first approach, the presence of a foreign gene inserted  
35 in an expression vector can be detected by DNA-DNA

hybridization using probes comprising sequences that are homologous to an inserted CNTFR gene. In the second approach, the recombinant vector/host system can be identified and selected based upon the presence or absence of certain "marker" gene functions (e.g., thymidine kinase activity, resistance to antibiotics, transformation phenotype, occlusion body formation in baculovirus, etc.) caused by the insertion of foreign genes in the vector. For example, if the CNTFR gene is inserted within the marker gene sequence of the vector, recombinants containing the CNTFR insert can be identified by the absence of the marker gene function. In the third approach, recombinant expression vectors can be identified by assaying the foreign gene product expressed by the recombinant. Such assays can be based, for example, on the physical or functional properties of the CNTFR gene product, for example, by binding of the receptor to CNTF or to an antibody which directly recognizes the CNTFR.

In an additional embodiment, cells which do not normally express CNTFR may be transfected with recombinant-CNTFR encoding nucleic acid and then tested for the expression of functional CNTFR by exposing the transfectants to CNTF and then testing for an increase in cAMP levels.

Once a particular recombinant DNA molecule is identified and isolated, several methods known in the art may be used to propagate it. Once a suitable host system and growth conditions are established, recombinant expression vectors can be propagated and prepared in quantity. As previously explained, the expression vectors which can be used include, but are not limited to, the following vectors or their derivatives: human or animal viruses such as vaccinia virus or adenovirus; insect viruses such as baculovirus; yeast vectors; bacteriophage

vectors (e.g., lambda), and plasmid and cosmid DNA vectors, to name but a few.

In addition, a host cell strain may be chosen which modulates the expression of the inserted sequences, or modifies and processes the gene product in the specific fashion desired. Expression from certain promoters can be elevated in the presence of certain inducers; thus, expression of the genetically engineered CNTFR protein may be controlled. Furthermore, different host cells have characteristic and specific mechanisms for the translational and post-translational processing and modification (e.g., glycosylation, cleavage) of proteins. Appropriate cell lines or host systems can be chosen to ensure the desired modification and processing of the foreign protein expressed. For example, expression in a bacterial system can be used to produce an unglycosylated core protein product. Expression in yeast may be used to produce a glycosylated product. Expression in mammalian cells can be used to ensure "native" glycosylation of the heterologous CNTFR protein. Furthermore, different vector/host expression systems may effect processing reactions such as proteolytic cleavages to different extents.

Once a recombinant which expresses the CNTFR gene is identified, the gene product should be analyzed. This can be achieved by assays based on the physical or functional properties of the product.

Once the CNTFR protein is identified, it may be isolated and purified by standard methods including chromatography (e.g., ion exchange, affinity, and sizing column chromatography), centrifugation, differential solubility, or by any other standard technique for the purification of proteins. In particular, CNTFR protein may be isolated by binding to an affinity column comprising CNTF bound to a stationary support.

Nucleic acid sequences complementary to DNA or RNA sequences encoding CNTFR or a functionally active portion thereof are also provided. In a particular aspect, antisense oligonucleotides can be synthesized, which are complementary to at least a portion of CNTFR mRNA.

5

#### 5.5. IDENTIFICATION OF MOLECULES RELATED TO THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

Multiple receptor-factor systems have been defined in which the same factor can bind to multiple receptors (see supra). As this may be the case for CNTF, the present invention allows for the identification of any additional CNTF receptors by the identical scheme used to obtain the CNTFR described here, except for the source of RNA used to prepare the cDNA expression library. A source may be chosen that would be likely to be expressing a distinct CNTF receptor; sources may be evaluated for the presence of CNTF-binding not attributable to the CNTFR (genetic probes and antibody reagents generated from the CNTFR sequence may be used to compare the protein responsible for CNTF binding in cell lines or tissue sources with the CNTF described here). In addition, because receptors are known which bind to more than one related factor (see supra), identification of the CNTFR should allow identification of any additional native ligands which bind this receptor.

In a further aspect of the invention, the CNTFR sequence may be used in the identification of CNTFR-related molecules. The CNTFR contains motifs which are shared with a variety of other receptors. The extracellular portion of the CNTFR contains both an "immunoglobulin" domain at its N-terminus, as well as a "cytokine receptor" domain which is separated from the "immunoglobulin" domain by a short hinge region. Although many receptors have homology to either the "immunoglobulin" or "cytokine receptor" domains, only one receptor - the IL-6 receptor - shares the same

35



particular arrangement of these domains with the CNTFR. The IL-6 receptor is thus the protein most related to the CNTFR. Interestingly, the IL-6 receptor is also similar to the CNTFR in that it has a very short intracytoplasmic domain which is apparently not required for initiating responses upon IL-6 binding (Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). Recently, a novel signal transducer for the IL-6 receptor, termed gp 130, was molecularly cloned. This transducer does not bind IL-6 by itself, but it does confer high affinity binding to the IL-6 receptor and it is required to transduce the IL-6 signal (Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). Cloning of the CNTFR reveals that it shares important features with the IL-6 receptor that are not found in other known receptors, thus defining a new family of receptors. Homologies between these first two members of this receptor family, as defined by the present invention, may be used to identify additional related receptors by using DNA or antibody probes corresponding to homologous regions, or by using a polymerase chain reaction strategy together with degenerate oligonucleotides corresponding to shared regions of amino acid homology (e.g. Maisonpierre et al., 1990, Science 247:1146-1451). The present invention may also be used for the testing of whether the CNTFR utilizes the same signal transducer as the IL-6 receptor, or whether it utilizes a related molecule. Finally, the identification of CNTFR-related receptors should aid in the identification of novel ligands that would bind to these receptors.

According to the present invention, by screening a DNA library (comprising genomic DNA or, preferably, cDNA) with oligonucleotides corresponding to CNTFR sequence derived either from protein sequence data or from the nucleic acid sequence set forth in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1), clones may be identified which encode new members of the family described above. By decreasing the stringency of hybridization, the

chances of identifying somewhat divergent members of the family may be increased. It may also be desirable to use sequences substantially shared by members of the family which have been sequenced; such highly conserved regions may be particularly useful in identifying additional  
5 members of the family. Library screening may be performed using, for example, the hybridization technique of Benton and Davis (1977, Science 196:180) or Grunstein and Hogness (1975, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 72:3961-3965). Clones identified by hybridization may then be further analyzed,  
10 and new family members may be identified by restriction fragment mapping and sequencing techniques according to methods well known in the art.

It may be desirable to utilize polymerase chain reaction (PCR) technology (Saiki et al., 1985, Science  
15 230:1350-1354) to identify additional members of the CNTFR superfamily. For example, sense and antisense primers corresponding to known CNTFR sequence may be used in PCR, preferably using cDNA as template. It may be desirable to design these primers such that they include restriction  
20 enzyme cleavage sites which may facilitate the insertion of the products of PCR into appropriate cloning vectors. The products of PCR may be inserted into suitable vectors and the resulting clones may then be screened for new family members. Such screening may be performed using standard  
25 techniques, including hybridization analysis using probes corresponding to known sequence. For example, a series of probes representing different regions of a characterized CNTFR protein may be hybridized at low stringency to duplicate filters carrying DNA from clones generated using  
30 PCR, as outlined above. It may be observed that various clones may hybridize to some probes, but not others. New family members may also be identified by increasing the stringency of the hybridization conditions, wherein new members not identical to probes derived from known members  
35

would hybridize less strongly at higher stringency. Alternatively, new family members may be identified by restriction mapping or sequencing analysis using standard techniques to reveal differences in restriction maps or sequences relative to known family members.

5 In additional embodiments, the present invention provides for molecules which form a complex with CNTFR and thereby may participate in CNTFR function. For example, it has been found that CNTFR does not, by sequence analysis, appear to possess a cytoplasmic domain; it may, in fact, be  
10 joined to a membrane through GPI linkage glycosylphosphatidylinositol (reviewed in Ferguson et al., 1988, Ann. Rev. Biochem. 57:285-320). This suggests that at least one other molecule forms an association with CNTFR to participate in signal transduction across the cell  
15 membrane. Such a molecule may be, for example, a protein such as GP130 that is found associated with IL-6R (Taga et al., 1989, Cell 58:573-581); this is particularly likely in light of the homology between CNTFR and the IL-6 receptor. Molecules which are associated with CNTFR at the cell  
20 membrane may be isolated and identified by any method known in the art, including but not limited to chemical cross-linkage, coprecipitation with anti-CNTFR antibody, or via a CNTF/tag, and/or by protein or lipid purification techniques.

25 Further, the present invention provides for molecules other than CNTF which may bind to CNTFR. Such molecules are defined as molecules which compete with CNTF, including other normal ligands, for CNTFR binding, and include peptides, peptide derivatives and non-peptide (e.g.  
30 peptidomimetic) compounds.

## 5.6. UTILITY OF THE INVENTION

### 5.6.1. ASSAY SYSTEMS

The present invention provides for assay systems in which CNTF activity or activities similar to CNTF activity resulting from exposure to a peptide or non-peptide compound may be detected by measuring a physiological response to CNTF in a cell or cell line responsive to CNTF which expresses the CNTFR molecules of the invention. A physiological response may comprise any of the biological effects of CNTF, including but not limited to, those described in Section 2.2, supra, as well as the transcriptional activation of certain nucleic acid sequences (e.g. promoter/enhancer elements as well as structural genes), CNTF-related processing, translation, or phosphorylation, the induction of secondary processes in response to processes directly or indirectly induced by CNTF, and morphological changes, such as neurite sprouting, or the ability to support the survival of cells such as ciliary ganglion cells, motoneurons, Purkinje cells, or hippocampal neurons, to name but a few.

In a preferred specific embodiment of the invention, the functional interaction between CNTF and the CNTFR may be observed by detecting an increase in the production of "immediate early" primary response genes activated in response to many growth factor-stimulated transmembrane signals, including, but not limited to, c-fos and c-jun. For example, the activation of immediate early genes may be detected by Northern blot analysis of immediate early gene mRNA levels. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, c-fos or c-jun mRNA levels may be determined by Northern blot analysis of mRNA prepared from target cells incubated with CNTF, wherein CNTF activity is evidenced by an increase in levels of c-fos or c-jun. Of note, in particular embodiments of the invention, once target cells have been produced that contain recombinant CNTFR-encoding

nucleic acid or selected by virtue of binding to CNTF, it may be desirable to ensure that the target cells respond characteristically to CNTF or compounds with CNTF-like activity. In the context of the present invention, the term CNTF-like activity is construed to mean biological  
5 activity which is similar but may or may not be identical to that of CNTF; such activities would include but are not limited to those described in Section 2.2, supra or the activation of particular immediate early promoters such as the fos or jun promoters.

10 The present invention provides for the development of novel assay systems which may be utilized in the screening of compounds for CNTF- or CNTF-like activity. Target cells which bind to CNTF may be produced by transfection with CNTFR-encoding nucleic acid or may be identified and  
15 segregated by, for example, fluorescent-activated cell sorting, sedimentation of rosettes, or limiting dilution as described in Section 5.6.3, infra.

Once target cell lines are produced or identified, it may be desirable to select for cells which are  
20 exceptionally sensitive to CNTF. Such target cells may bear a greater number of CNTFRs; target cells bearing a relative abundance of CNTFRs could be identified by selecting target cells which bind to high levels of CNTF, for example cells which when incubated with CNTF/tag and  
25 subjected to immunofluorescence assay produce a relatively higher degree of fluorescence. Alternatively, cells which are exceptionally sensitive to CNTF may exhibit a relatively strong biological response, such as a sharp increase in immediate early gene products such as c-fos or  
30 c-jun, in response to CNTF binding. By developing assay systems using target cells which are extremely sensitive to CNTF, the present invention provides for methods of screening for CNTF or CNTF-like activity which are capable of detecting low levels of CNTF activity.  
35

In particular, using recombinant DNA techniques, the present invention provides for CNTF target cells which are engineered to be highly sensitive to CNTF. For example, the CNTF-receptor gene, cloned according to the methods set forth in Section 5.1, may be inserted into cells which are naturally CNTF responsive such that the recombinant CNTFR gene is expressed at high levels and the resulting engineered target cells express a high number of CNTFRs on their cell surface.

Alternatively, or additionally, the target cells may be engineered to comprise a recombinant gene which is expressed at high levels in response to CNTF/receptor binding. Such a recombinant gene may preferably be associated with a readily detectable product. For example, and not by way of limitation, transcriptional control regions (i.e. promoter/enhancer regions) from an immediate early gene may be used to control the expression of a reporter gene in a construct which may be introduced into target cells. The immediate early gene/reporter gene construct, when expressed at high levels in target cells by virtue of a strong promoter/enhancer or high copy number, may be used to produce an amplified response to CNTFR binding. For example, and not by way of limitation, a CNTF-responsive promoter (such as the c-fos or c-jun promoter) may be used to control the expression of detectable reporter genes including  $\beta$ -galactosidase, growth hormone, chloramphenicol acetyl transferase, neomycin phosphotransferase, luciferase, or  $\beta$ -glucuronidase. Detection of the products of these reporter genes, well known to one skilled in the art, may serve as a sensitive indicator for CNTF or CNTF-like activity of pharmaceutical compounds.

The CNTFR-encoding or reporter gene constructs discussed above may be inserted into target cells using any method known in the art, including but not limited to

transfection, electroporation, calcium phosphate/DEAE dextran methods, and cell gun, as well as the production of transgenic animals bearing the above-mentioned constructs as transgenes, and from which CNTF target cells may be selected using the methods discussed supra.

5           Assay systems of the present invention enable the efficient screening of pharmaceutical compounds for utility in the treatment of CNTF-associated diseases. For example, and not by way of limitation, it may be desirable to screen  
10 a pharmaceutical agent for CNTF activity and therapeutic efficacy in cerebellar degeneration. In a specific embodiment of the invention, Purkinje cells responsive to CNTF may be identified and isolated, and then cultured in microwells in a multiwell culture plate. Culture medium  
15 with added test agent, or added CNTF, in numerous dilutions may be added to the wells, together with suitable controls. The cells may then be examined for improved survival, neurite sprouting, and so forth, and the activity of test agent and CNTF, as well as their relative activities, may be determined. As another example,  
20 motorneuron lesions have been shown to respond favorably to CNTF (Sendtner et al., 1990, Nature 345:440). It may, therefore, be desirable to identify CNTF-like compounds which can, like CNTF, prevent motorneuron cell death following axotomy. CNTF responsive motorneurons could be  
25 utilized in assay systems to identify compounds useful in treating motorneuron diseases. Considering that CNTF has been found to be effective in preventing motorneuron cell death following axotomy, which clearly is an extremely important observation when contemplating treatments for  
30 spinal cord injuries, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, and diabetic neuropathy, in designing drugs which would be effective in treating these disorders, including drugs which may be required to pass the blood brain barrier, it is essential to have access to a reliable and sensitive  
35

screening system such as the methods the present invention provide. For another example, if a particular disease is found to be associated with a defective CNTF response in a particular tissue, a rational treatment for the disease would be supplying the patient with exogenous CNTF.

5 However, it may be desirable to develop molecules which have a longer half-life than endogenous CNTF, or which act as CNTF agonists, or which are targeted to a particular tissue. Accordingly, the methods of the invention can be used to produce efficient and sensitive screening systems  
10 which can be used to identify molecules with the desired properties. Similar assay systems could be used to identify CNTF antagonists.

#### 5.6.2. EXPERIMENTAL MODEL SYSTEMS

15 The present invention also provides for experimental model systems for studying the physiological role of CNTF. In these model systems, CNTFR protein, peptide fragment, or a derivative thereof, may be either supplied to the system or produced within the system. Such model systems could be  
20 used to study the effects of CNTF excess or CNTF depletion. The experimental model systems may be used to study the effects of increased or decreased response to CNTF in cell or tissue cultures, in whole animals, in particular cells or tissues within whole animals or tissue culture systems,  
25 or over specified time intervals (including during embryogenesis) in embodiments in which CNTFR expression is controlled by an inducible or developmentally regulated promoter. In particular embodiments of the invention, the CMV promoter may be used to control expression of CNTFR in  
30 transgenic animals. The term "transgenic animals," as used herein, refers to non-human transgenic animals, including transgenic mosaics, which carry a transgene in some or all of their cells, which include any non-human species, and which are produced by any method known in the art,  
35



including, but not limited to microinjection, cell fusion, transfection, electroporation, etc. For example, the animals may be produced by a microinjection of zygotes method such as that set forth in "Brinster et al, 1989, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:4438-4442.

5       The present invention also provides for model systems for autoimmune disease in which an autoimmune response is directed toward CNTFR. Such models comprise animals which have been immunized with immunogenic amounts of CNTFR and preferably found to produce anti-CNTFR antibodies and/or  
10       cell-mediated immunity. To produce such a model system, it may be desirable to administer the CNTFR in conjunction with an immune adjuvant, such as Bacille Calmette Guerin (BCG).

15       5.6.2.1. MODELS FOR INCREASED CNTF ACTIVITY

For example, and not by way of limitation, an experimental model system may be created which may be used to study the effects of excess CNTF activity. In such a system, the response to CNTF may be increased by  
20       engineering an increased number of CNTFRs on cells of the model system relative to cells which have not been so engineered. It may be preferable to provide an increased number of CNTFRs selectively on cells which normally express CNTFRs.

25       Cells may be engineered to produce increased numbers of CNTFR by infection with a virus which carries a CNTFR gene of the invention. Alternatively, the CNTFR gene may be provided to the cells by transfection.

30       If the model system is an animal, a recombinant CNTFR gene may be introduced into the cells of the animal by infection with a virus which carries the CNTFR gene. Alternatively, a transgenic animal may be created which carries the CNTFR gene as a transgene.

In order to ensure expression of CNTFR, the CNTFR gene should be placed under the control of a suitable promoter sequence. It may be desirable to put the CNTFR gene under the control of a constitutive and/or tissue specific promoter, including but not limited to the CNS neuron  
5 specific enolase, neurofilament, and tyrosine hydroxylase promoter, an inducible promoter, such as the metallothionein promoter, the UV activated promoter in the human immunodeficiency virus long terminal repeat (Valeri et al., 1988, Nature 333:78-81), or the CMV promoter (as  
10 contained in pCMX, infra) or a developmentally regulated promoter.

By increasing the number of cellular CNTFRs, the response to endogenous CNTF may be increased. If the model system contains little or no CNTF, CNTF may be added to the  
15 system. It may also be desirable to add additional CNTF to the model system in order to evaluate the effects of excess CNTF activity. Over expressing CNTF (or secreted CNTF) may be the preferable method for studying the effects of elevated levels of CNTF on cells already expressing CNTFR.  
20 More preferably would be to express CNTFR in all cells (general expression) and determine which cells are then endowed with functional responsiveness to CNTF, thus allowing the potential identification of a second receptor component, if one exists.

25

#### 5.6.2.2. MODELS FOR DECREASED CNTF ACTIVITY

Alternatively, as an example, and not by way of limitation, an experimental model system may be created which may be used to study the effects of diminished CNTF  
30 activity. This system may permit identification of processes or neurons which require CNTF, and which may represent potential therapeutic targets. In such a system, the response to CNTF may be decreased by providing recombinant CNTFRs which are not associated with a cell

35

surface or which are engineered so as to be ineffective in transducing a response to CNTF.

For example, CNTFR protein, peptide, or derivative may be supplied to the system such that the supplied receptor may compete with endogenous CNTFR for CNTF binding, thereby  
5 diminishing the response to CNTF. The CNTFR may be a cell-free receptor which is either added to the system or produced by the system. For example, a CNTFR protein which lacks the transmembrane domain may be produced by cells within the system, such as an anchorless CNTFR that may be  
10 secreted from the producing cell. Alternatively, CNTFR protein, peptide or derivative may be added to an extracellular space within the system.

In additional embodiments of the invention, a recombinant CNTFR gene may be used to inactivate or "knock  
15 out" the endogenous gene by homologous recombination, and thereby create a CNTFR deficient cell, tissue, or animal. For example, and not by way of limitation, a recombinant CNTFR gene may be engineered to contain an insertional mutation, for example the neo gene, which inactivates  
20 CNTFR. Such a construct, under the control of a suitable promoter, may be introduced into a cell, such as an embryonic stem cell, by a technique such as transfection, transduction, injection, etc. Cells containing the construct may then be selected by G418 resistance. Cells  
25 which lack an intact CNTFR gene may then be identified, e.g. by Southern blotting or Northern blotting or assay of expression. Cells lacking an intact CNTFR gene may then be fused to early embryo cells to generate transgenic animals deficient in CNTFR. A comparison of such an animal with an  
30 animal not expressing endogenous CNTF would reveal that either the two phenotypes match completely or that they do not, implying the presence of additional CNTF-like factors or receptors.

Such an animal may be used to define specific neuronal populations, or any other in vivo processes, normally dependent upon CNTF. Thus, these populations or processes may be expected to be effected if the animal did not express CNTFR and therefore could not respond to CNTF.

5 Alternatively, a recombinant CNTFR protein, peptide, or derivative which competes with endogenous receptor for CNTF may be expressed on the surface of cells within the system, but may be engineered so as to fail to transduce a response to CNTF binding.

10 The recombinant CNTFR proteins, peptides or derivatives described above may bind to CNTF with an affinity that is similar to or different from the affinity of endogenous CNTFR to CNTF. To more effectively diminish the response to CNTF, the CNTFR protein, peptide, or  
15 derivative may desirably bind to CNTF with a greater affinity than that exhibited by the native receptor.

If the CNTFR protein, peptide, or derivative is produced within the model system, nucleic acid encoding the CNTFR protein, peptide, or derivative may be supplied to  
20 the system by infection, transduction, transfection, etc. or as a transgene. As discussed supra, the CNTFR gene may be placed under the control of a suitable promoter, which may be, for example, a tissue-specific promoter or an inducible promoter or developmentally regulated promoter.

25 In a specific embodiment of the invention the endogenous CNTFR gene of a cell may be replaced by a mutant CNTFR gene by homologous recombination.

In a further embodiment of the invention, CNTFR expression may be reduced by providing CNTFR expressing  
30 cells with an amount of CNTFR anti-sense RNA or DNA effective to reduce expression of CNTFR protein.

### 5.6.3. DIAGNOSTIC APPLICATIONS

According to the present invention, CNTFR probes may be used to identify cells and tissues which are responsive to CNTF in normal or diseased states. The present  
5 invention provides for methods for identifying cells which are responsive to CNTF comprising detecting CNTFR expression in such cells. CNTFR expression may be evidenced by transcription of CNTFR mRNA or production of CNTFR protein. CNTFR expression may be detected using  
10 probes which identify CNTFR nucleic acid or protein.

One variety of probe which may be used to detect CNTFR expression is a nucleic acid probe, which may be used to detect CNTFR-encoding RNA by any method known in the art, including, but not limited to, in situ hybridization,  
15 Northern blot analysis, or PCR related techniques.

Another variety of probe which may be used is tagged CNTF, as set forth in U. S. Serial No. 07/532,285, the complete text of which is incorporated by reference herein.

According to the present invention, the term "tagged"  
20 CNTF should be construed to mean a CNTF molecule which is attached to a second detectable compound (the "tag"). The detectable compound may comprise radioisotope, a fluorescent moiety, or a ligand capable of binding to a receptor, or a substance which may be detected  
25 colorimetrically or which has catalytic activity. In preferred embodiments, the tag may comprise an antigenic determinant such that antibody is capable of binding to the tag. In alternative embodiments the tag itself may be an antibody; in a specific embodiment of the invention the tag  
30 is monoclonal antibody RP3-17. It is desirable that the tag not interfere with the biological activity of CNTF and that the methods of detection of the tag would not substantially interfere with the binding of CNTF to its  
35 receptor.

The tag may be attached to CNTF using any method known in the art. In preferred embodiments of the invention, the tag is covalently linked to CNTF but in some cases it may be desirable that the tag be attached by noncovalent forces (for example, if the tag comprises an immunoglobulin molecule).

The tag may be of any molecular size suitable for preserving its detector function without substantially altering the biological activity of the attached CNTF. If the tag is to provide an antigenic determinant, it may be desirable that it comprise at least about 5-15 amino acids.

For purposes of illustration, and not by way of limitation, in one preferred specific method of the invention, CNTF may be tagged using a "patch" polymerase chain reaction in which recombinant neurotrophic factor (CNTF) is engineered to carry at its C-terminal end ten amino acids corresponding to a known antigenic determinant. For example, and not by way of limitation, this antigenic determinant may correspond to a defined epitope of the human c-myc proto-oncogene protein.

For example, and not by way of limitation, the "patch" PCR method may be used to attach the ten amino acid myc tag as follows (the present invention provides for any amino acid tag attached by analogous methods). A 5' PCR primer corresponding to an CNTF sequence upstream of a unique restriction enzyme cleavage site in a bacterial expression construct may be utilized in PCR reaction with a "patch" primer comprising nucleic acid sequence corresponding to 3' terminal CNTF sequence and nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide tag, using cDNA from CNTF-responsive cells as template.

The PCR reaction should also comprise a 3' primer corresponding to the patch primer sequence and including nucleic acid sequence which incorporates unique restriction endonuclease cleavage sites. In preferred embodiments, the

5' and 3' primers may be used in excess of patch primer, such that PCR amplification between 5' and patch primers may cease after a few PCR cycles whereas amplification between the 5' and 3' primers may initiate and continue to produce a high yield of full length CNTF/tag sequence. The "patch" technique overcomes the need for long primers whose synthesis may be difficult and time consuming. The amplified CNTF/tag product may be gel purified, digested with restriction enzymes which cleave at the sites engineered into the termini of the product, and then subcloned into the corresponding restriction sites of an expression vector. For example, to produce CNTF-myc tag, the following primers may be used: 5' primer = 5' GAC TCG AGT CGA CAT CGG AGG CTG ATG GGA TGCC 3' (SEQ ID NO:3); patch primer = 3' CTA AAG ACT CCT CCT AGA CAT CGC CGG CGT ATCG 5' (SEQ ID NO:4); primers may be used in a ratio of 100 ng 5' primer/100 ng 3' primer/1ng patch primer; for details see Section 6, *infra*. The expression of CNTF/tag may be carried out as described for the expression of recombinant CNTF in U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor," filed August 20, 1990 or PCT Publication No WO91/04316, published April 4, 1991 by Sendtner et al.

The present invention also provides for a tag which comprises an immunoglobulin molecule, or a portion thereof, e.g. an Fc, F(ab)<sub>2</sub>, or F(ab)' fragment of an antibody molecule. The tag should bind to CNTF, and may be a polyclonal or monoclonal antibody.

According to the invention, tagged CNTF may be incubated with cells under conditions which would promote the binding or attachment of CNTF to said cells. In most cases, this may be achieved under standard culture conditions. For example, in a preferred embodiment of the invention, cells may be incubated for about 30 minutes in the presence of tagged CNTF. If the tag is an antibody

molecule, it may be preferable to allow CNTF to bind to cells first and subsequently wash cells to remove unbound ligand and then add anti-CNTF antibody tag.

In particular embodiments of the invention, tagged CNTF on the surface of CNTF-responsive cells, hereafter called target cells, may be detected by rosetting assays in which indicator cells that are capable of binding to the tag are incubated with cells bearing CNTF/tag such that they adhere to CNTF/tag on the target cells and the bound indicator cells form rosette-like clusters around CNTF-tag bearing cells. These rosettes may be visualized by standard microscopic techniques on plated cells, or, alternatively, may allow separation of rosetted and non-rosetted cells by density centrifugation. In a preferred specific embodiment of the invention, target cells, such as neuronal cells, may be harvested and plated at a concentration of about 200 cells/well in a multiple well (e.g. 60 well) culture plate in medium such as RPMI 1640 with 10% fetal bovine serum and 2 mM glutamine. Plated cells may be incubated for about 16 to 24 hours at 37°C in a humidified 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere incubator to allow cells to attach. Next, excess cell culture media may be removed and the cells may be incubated for about 30 minutes at room temperature with tagged CNTF. The cells may then be washed several times with PBS (with calcium and magnesium) supplemented with 1% bovine serum albumin (BSA) to remove unbound ligand and then incubated for about 30 minutes at room temperature with about 10 µg/ml of antibody which recognizes the tag molecule. Cells may then be washed several times with PBS to remove unbound antibody. Then, the target cells (bearing CNTF/tag bound to anti-tag antibody) may be incubated at room temperature for 1 hour with about a 0.2% (v/v) suspension of rosetting indicator cells which bind to the anti-tag antibody (such as indicator cells bearing rabbit-anti-mouse immunoglobulin).



The plates may then be washed with PBS and examined under a phase contrast microscope for rosettes. For example, if the anti-tag antibody is produced by a mouse, indicator cells may be produced by coating erythrocytes (such as human O+ erythrocytes) with anti-(mouse immunoglobulin) antibody produced by another species. Indicator cells may be prepared by incubating erythrocytes with anti-immunoglobulin antibody (at a concentration greater than about 1 mg/ml) in the presence of 0.01%  $\text{CrCl}_3 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$  diluted in saline according to the procedure of Albino et al. (1981, J. Exp. Med. 154:1764-1778). Alternatively, magnetic beads or other methods known in the art may be used.

In alternative embodiments of the invention, tagged CNTF on the surface of target cells may be detected using immunofluorescent techniques in which a molecule which reacts with the tag, preferably an antibody, directly or indirectly produces fluorescent light. The fluorescence may either be observed under a microscope or used to segregate CNTF/tag-bearing cells by fluorescence activated cell sorting techniques. In a preferred specific embodiment of the invention presented by way of example, target cells may be triturated and resuspended in assay buffer containing CNTF/tag (in excess concentration) and sodium azide (0.05%) for about 30 minutes at 4°C. Cells may then be washed three times in assay buffer by centrifugation at 800 rpm for 5 minutes. Cells may then be incubated with anti-tag antibody at a concentration of about 10  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  for about 30 minutes at 4°C, washed as above, and then incubated for about 30 minutes at 4°C with biotinylated anti-immunoglobulin and streptavidin-Texas Red conjugate. The cells may then be washed, resuspended in mounting solution, coverslipped, and then examined by fluorescent microscopy.

The present invention also provides for methods for detecting other forms of tags, such as chromogenic tags, catalytic tags, etc. The detection methods for any particular tag will depend on the conditions necessary for producing a signal from the tag, but should be readily  
5 discernible by one skilled in the art.

Yet another variety of probe which may be used is anti-CNTFR antibody.

According to the invention, CNTFR protein, or fragments or derivatives thereof, may be used as an  
10 immunogen to generate anti-CNTFR antibodies. By providing for the production of relatively abundant amounts of CNTFR protein using recombinant techniques for protein synthesis (based upon the CNTFR nucleic acid sequences of the invention), the problem of limited quantities of CNTFR has  
15 been obviated.

To further improve the likelihood of producing an anti-CNTFR immune response, the amino acid sequence of CNTFR may be analyzed in order to identify portions of the molecule which may be associated with increased  
20 immunogenicity. For example, the amino acid sequence may be subjected to computer analysis to identify surface epitopes which present computer-generated plots of hydrophilicity, surface probability, flexibility, antigenic index, amphiphilic helix, amphiphilic sheet, and secondary  
25 structure of CNTFR. Alternatively, the deduced amino acid sequences of CNTFR from different species could be compared, and relatively non-homologous regions identified; these non-homologous regions would be more likely to be immunogenic across various species.

30 For preparation of monoclonal antibodies directed toward CNTFR, any technique which provides for the production of antibody molecules by continuous cell lines in culture may be used. For example, the hybridoma technique originally developed by Kohler and Milstein  
35

(1975, Nature 256:495-497), as well as the trioma technique, the human B-cell hybridoma technique (Kozbor et al., 1983, Immunology Today 4:72), and the EBV-hybridoma technique to produce human monoclonal antibodies (Cole et al., 1985, in "Monoclonal Antibodies and Cancer Therapy,"  
5 Alan R. Liss, Inc. pp. 77-96) and the like are within the scope of the present invention.

The monoclonal antibodies for therapeutic use may be human monoclonal antibodies or chimeric human-mouse (or  
10 ~~other species~~) monoclonal antibodies. Human monoclonal antibodies may be made by any of numerous techniques known in the art (e.g., Teng et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:7308-7312; Kozbor et al., 1983, Immunology Today 4:72-79; Olsson et al., 1982, Meth. Enzymol. 92:3-16).  
15 Chimeric antibody molecules may be prepared containing a mouse antigen-binding domain with human constant regions (Morrison et al., 1984, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 81:6851, Takeda et al., 1985, Nature 314:452).

Various procedures known in the art may be used for the production of polyclonal antibodies to epitopes of  
20 CNTFR. For the production of antibody, various host animals can be immunized by injection with CNTFR protein, or fragment or derivative thereof, including but not limited to rabbits, mice, rats, etc. Various adjuvants may be used to increase the immunological response, depending  
25 on the host species, and including but not limited to Freund's (complete and incomplete), mineral gels such as aluminum hydroxide, surface active substances such as lysolecithin, pluronic polyols, polyanions, peptides, oil emulsions, keyhole limpet hemocyanins, dinitrophenol, and  
30 potentially useful human adjuvants such as BCG (Bacille Calmette-Guerin) and, Corynebacterium parvum.

A molecular clone of an antibody to a CNTFR epitope can be prepared by known techniques. Recombinant DNA methodology (see e.g., Maniatis et al., 1982, Molecular  
35

Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York) may be used to construct nucleic acid sequences which encode a monoclonal antibody molecule, or antigen binding region thereof.

Antibody molecules may be purified by known techniques, e.g., immunoabsorption or immunoaffinity chromatography, chromatographic methods such as HPLC (high performance liquid chromatography), or a combination thereof, etc.

The present invention provides for antibody molecules as well as fragments of such antibody molecules. Antibody fragments which contain the idiotype of the molecule can be generated by known techniques. For example, such fragments include but are not limited to: the  $F(ab')_2$  fragment which can be produced by pepsin digestion of the antibody molecule; the Fab' fragments which can be generated by reducing the disulfide bridges of the  $F(ab')_2$  fragment, and the Fab fragments which can be generated by treating the antibody molecule with papain and a reducing agent.

The abovementioned probes may be used experimentally to identify cells or tissues which hitherto had not been shown to express CNTFR. Furthermore, these methods may be used to identify the expression of CNTFR by aberrant tissues, such as malignancies. In additional embodiments, these methods may be used diagnostically to compare the expression of CNTFR in cells, fluids, or tissue from a patient suffering from a disorder with comparable cells, fluid, or tissue from a healthy person. Fluid is construed to refer to any body fluid, but particularly blood or cerebrospinal fluid. A difference in the levels of expression of CNTFR in the patient compared to a healthy person may indicate that the patient's disorder may be primarily or secondarily related to CNTF metabolism. An increase in levels of CNTFR, for example, could either indicate that the patient's disorder is associated with an

increased sensitivity to normal levels of CNTF or, alternatively, may suggest that the patient's CNTF levels are low such that the number of receptors is increased by way of compensation. These etiologies may be distinguished from one another by administering CNTF to the patient. If  
5 his condition worsens, he may suffer from CNTF hypersensitivity; if it improves, he may be suffering from a CNTF deficiency. CNTF or CNTF antagonist-based therapeutic regimens may be chosen accordingly.

10 Differences in expression can be detected at the protein and/or RNA level; i.e. by measuring amounts of CNTFR protein or CNTFR RNA in a patient relative to those amounts in healthy persons.

The abovementioned probes may also be used to select CNTF-responsive cells for use in assay systems, as  
15 described above, or in U. S. Application Serial No. 07/532,285, or according to standard methods of cell selection or cell sorting.

#### 5.6.4. THERAPEUTIC APPLICATIONS

20 The present invention also provides for methods in which a patient suffering from a disorder, such as neurologic disorder is treated with an effective amount of CNTFR protein, peptide fragment, or derivative of the invention. Therapeutic methods comprising administering  
25 CNTFR, CNTFR agonists, CNTFR antagonists (which compete with endogenous CNTF), or anti-CNTFR antibodies are within the scope of the present invention.

The present invention also provides for pharmaceutical compositions comprising CNTFR protein, peptide fragment, or  
30 derivative in a suitable pharmacologic carrier.

The CNTFR protein, peptide fragment, or derivative may be administered systemically or locally. Any appropriate mode of administration known in the art may be used, including, but not limited to, intravenous, intrathecal,  
35

intraarterial, intranasal, oral, subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, or by local injection or surgical implant. Sustained release formulations are also provided for.

As our understanding of neurodegenerative disease/neurotrauma becomes clearer, it may become apparent that it would be beneficial to decrease the trophic effect of endogenous CNTF. Therefore, in areas of nervous system trauma, it may be desirable to provide CNTF antagonists, including, but not limited to, cell-free CNTFR which may compete with endogenous cellular receptor for CNTF binding. Under such circumstances, it may be desirable to provide CNTF antagonist locally at the injury site rather than systemically. Use of a CNTFR providing implant may be desirable.

Alternatively, certain conditions may benefit from an increase in CNTF responsiveness. It may therefore be beneficial to increase the number or binding affinity of CNTFRs in patients suffering from such conditions. This could be achieved through gene therapy. Selective expression of recombinant CNTFR in appropriate cells could be achieved using CNTFR genes controlled by tissue specific or inducible promoters or by producing localized infection with replication defective viruses carrying a recombinant CNTFR gene. Conditions which may benefit from increased sensitivity to CNTF include particularly but are not limited to motorneuron disorders including amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Werdnig-Hoffmann disease, chronic proximal spinal muscular atrophy, and post-polio syndrome. Such treatment may also be used for treatment of neurological disorders associated with diabetes, Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, and Huntington's chorea.

Further, the invention provides for treatment of disorders of a specific tissue or cell-type by administration of CNTF, which tissue or cell-type has been

identified as expressing CNTF receptors. In a specific embodiment, it has been shown that the CNTFR gene is expressed in muscle cells (see Section 8, *infra*), and that CNTF prevents the loss of both muscle weight and myofibrillar protein content associated with denervation atrophy in vivo (see Section 9, *infra*). Accordingly, the present invention provides for methods of treating muscle cell disorders, or disorders involving the neuromuscular unit, comprising administering to a patient in need of such treatment (i) a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence which encodes CNTFR or a functionally active portion or derivative thereof, such that it can be expressed, or (ii) CNTF, or a functionally active portion or derivative thereof. Such disorders include but are not limited to those in which atrophic or dystrophic change of muscle is the fundamental pathological finding. For example, such muscle atrophy can result from denervation (loss of contact by the muscle with its nerve) due to nerve trauma; degenerative, metabolic, or inflammatory (e.g., Guillian-Barre syndrome) peripheral neuropathy, or damage to nerves caused by environmental toxins or drugs. In another embodiment, the muscle atrophy results from denervation due to a motor neuronopathy. Such motor neuronopathies include, but are not limited to: adult motor neuron disease, including Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS or Lou Gehrig's disease); infantile and juvenile spinal muscular atrophies, and autoimmune motor neuronopathy with multifocal conduction block. In another embodiment, the muscle atrophy results from chronic disuse. Such disuse atrophy may stem from conditions including, but not limited to: paralysis due to stroke, spinal cord injury, brain trauma or other Central Nervous System injury; skeletal immobilization due to trauma (such as fracture, sprain or dislocation) or prolonged bed rest. In yet another embodiment, the muscle atrophy results from

metabolic stress or nutritional insufficiency, including, but not limited to, the cachexia of cancer and other chronic illnesses, fasting or rhabdomyolysis, endocrine disorders such as, but not limited to, disorders of the thyroid gland and diabetes. The muscle atrophy can also be  
5 due to a muscular dystrophy syndrome, including but not limited to the Duchenne, Becker, myotonic, Fascioscapulohumeral, Emery-Dreifuss, oculopharyngeal, scapulohumeral, limb girdle, and congenital types, and the dystrophy known as Hereditary Distal Myopathy. In a  
10 further embodiment, the muscle atrophy is due to a congenital myopathy, including, but not limited to Benign Congenital Hypotonia, Central Core disease, Nemaline Myopathy, and Myotubular (centronuclear) myopathy. In addition, CNTFR-encoding nucleic acids or CNTF and its  
15 active fragments or derivatives may be of use in the treatment of acquired (toxic or inflammatory) myopathies. Myopathies which occur as a consequence of an inflammatory disease of muscle, include, but are not limited to polymyositis and dermatomyositis. Toxic myopathies may be  
20 due to agents including, but not limited to amiodarone, chloroquine, clofibrate, colchicine, doxorubicin, ethanol, hydroxychloroquine, organophosphates, perihexiline, and vincristine.

In a further embodiment of the invention, patients  
25 that suffer from an excess of CNTFR, hypersensitivity to CNTF, excess CNTF, etc. may be treated by administering an effective amount of anti-sense RNA or anti-sense oligodeoxyribonucleotides corresponding to the CNTFR gene coding region thereby decreasing expression of CNTFR.  
30



6. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION CLONING OF THE CILIARY  
NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

6.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

6.1.1. CONSTRUCTION OF A CNTF-RECEPTOR  
EXPRESSION LIBRARY

5 SH-SY5Y cells (originally obtained from Dr. June  
Biedler) were used as a source of mRNA for construction of  
a cDNA library using the pCMX expression vector (described  
in copending U. S. patent Application Serial No. 07/678,408  
filed March 28, 1991, see supra), a derivative of the pCDM8  
10 vector (Seed, 1987, Nature 329:840-842). Inserts for the  
cDNA library were selected on an agarose gel for sizes  
larger than 1 kb.

6.1.2. "PANNING" METHOD

15 The "panning" method developed by Seed and Aruffo  
(1987, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 84:3365-3369) was  
modified as follows: instead of incubating the cells with  
antibodies recognizing the receptor, cells were incubated  
first with CNTF/myc (1  $\mu$ g/ml) on ice for 30 minutes, spun  
20 through PBS/2% Ficoll to remove excess ligand, and then  
incubated with 9E10 antibody obtained from Oncogene  
Sciences, Manhasset, N.Y. for 30 minutes on ice. This was  
followed by another spin through PBS/2% Ficoll and  
"panning" on plates coated with anti-myc peptide mouse  
25 monoclonal antibody obtained from Sigma. The plates were  
prepared as follows: bacteriological 60 mm plates (Falcon  
1007 or the equivalent), or 10 cm dishes such as Fisher 8-  
757-12 were coated with anti-myc mouse monoclonal antibody,  
diluted to 10 micrograms per ml in 50 mM Tris HCl pH 9.5.  
30 3 ml of antibody was used to coat each 6 cm dish or 10 ml  
was used per 10 cm dish; plates were exposed to antibody  
for about 1.5 hrs, then antibody was removed to the next  
dish, allowed to stand for 1.5 hrs, and then removed again  
to a third dish. Plates were washed three times with 0.15

-52-

M NaCl (a wash bottle is convenient for this), and incubated with 3 ml 1 mg/ml BSA in PBS overnight. In particular "panning" was performed as follows: cells were cultured in 100 mm dishes. Medium was aspirated from each dish, and 2 ml PBS/0.5 mM EDTA/0.02% azide was added and the mixture was incubated at 37° for 30 min to detach cells from the dish. The cells were triturated vigorously with a short pasteur pipet, collected from each dish in a centrifuge tube, and spun 4 min at a setting of 2.5 (200 x g). Cells were resuspended in 0.5-1.0 ml PBS/EDTA/azide/5% FBS and incubated with CNTF/myc for 30 min on ice. An equal volume of PBS/EDTA/azide was added, layered carefully on 3 ml PBS/EDTA/azide/2% Ficoll, spun 4 min at a setting of 2.5, and the supernatant was aspirated in one smooth movement. The cells were then incubated with 9E10 antibody for 30 minutes on ice, and the spin through PBS/EDTA/azide/2% Ficoll was repeated. The cells were taken up in 0.5 ml PBS/EDTA/azide and aliquots were added to anti-myc mouse monoclonal antibody-coated dishes containing 3 ml PBS/EDTA/azide/5% FBS. Cells were added from at most two 60 mm dishes to one 60 mm antibody coated plate, and allowed to sit at room temperature 1-3 hours. Excess cells not adhering to dish were removed by gentle washing with PBS/5% serum or with medium (2 or 3 washes of 3 ml were usually sufficient).

#### 6.1.3. IDENTIFICATION OF CLONES CONTAINING THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR GENE

Plasmid DNA from the expression library was transfected into COSM5 cells (approximately 250-500 ng per 100 mm dish; 2 dishes were transfected), using DEAE/chloroquine according to standard procedures. Two days after transfection, cells were detached from their

35

dishes and subjected to the Aruffo/Seed panning procedure modified as described supra.

After washing nonadhering cells from the plates, Hirt supernatants (Hirt, 1967, J. Mol. Biol. 26:365-369) were prepared, and plasmid DNA was precipitated in the presence  
5 of 10-20  $\mu$ g of tRNA. The resulting DNA was introduced into DH10B bacteria (Electromax, BRL) by electroporation according to the manufacturer's instructions. Cultures grown from the electroporated bacteria were used to prepare plasmid DNA for another round of transfection and panning;  
10 a plate of COS cells transfected with this plasmid DNA clearly revealed a large number of COS cells expressing the CNTFR by an indirect iodinated-antibody binding assay (see Figure 1B for representative data, see below for assay methods). After a second round of panning/plasmid DNA  
15 isolation/electroporation on these transfectants, the bacterial transformants resulting from the electroporation step were plated out on ampicillin plates. Individual bacterial colonies were picked, and plasmid DNA prepared from each of the clones was transfected individually into  
20 COS cells for assay. Out of 15 plasmids tested, 14 resulted in transfected COS cells expressing CNTF binding sites by a variety of assays, including the indirect antibody binding assay and fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis described infra.

25

#### 6.1.4. DIRECT $^{125}$ I-hCNTF BINDING ASSAY

COS cells were transfected with plasmid DNA from the library, the enriched library, or individual clones. After  
48 hours, the media was removed and replaced with 0.25 ml  
30 of binding buffer (RPM1 1640 with 10% FBS and 0.1%  $\text{NaN}_3$ ) containing  $^{125}$ I-hCNTF alone or with unlabelled hCNTF. Incubations with  $^{125}$ I-hCNTF were for 60 minutes at room temperature. After incubations were complete, the  $^{125}$ I-hCNTF solution was removed and the cells were washed three  
35

times with 1.0 ml of binding buffer and then lysed with 0.25 ml of 0.1 N NaOH. This lysate was transferred to a 12 x 75 mm polystyrene tube and placed in a gamma counter. Non-specific binding was determined by the addition of at least 100 fold excess unlabelled hCNTF. After the last wash the plates were autoradiographed.

#### 6.1.5. FLUORESCENCE ACTIVATED CELL-SORTING ANALYSIS

Transfected COS cells were incubated sequentially with CNTF/myc, 9E10 antibody, and FITC-labelled goat anti-mouse antibody. Then they were detached from dishes and subjected to FACS analysis. The results of transfections with a negative and positive plasmid are depicted in Figure 1D; COS cells transfected with a CNTF-receptor expressing plasmid contain a large subpopulation displaying greatly increased fluorescence by this assay.

#### 6.1.6. IODINATION OF hCNTF

10  $\mu$ g hCNTF (560  $\mu$ g/ml in 10 mM NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH7.4) was iodinated with 1 mCi <sup>125</sup>I Na using lactoperoxidase 6 ng/ $\mu$ l (Sigma) for 15 minutes at 20°C. After 15 minutes the reaction was quenched with an equal volume of buffer containing 0.1 M NaI, 0.1% BSA and 0.1% cytochrome C, 0.3% HOAc, 0.05% phenol red and 0.02% NaN<sub>3</sub>. Aliquots were removed for determination of TCA precipitable counts. The remainder was loaded onto a BioRad PD - 10 biogel column equilibrated with 0.05 M NaPO<sub>4</sub>, 0.1 M NaCl, 0.5 mg/ml protamine sulfate and 1 mg/ml BSA. Fractions were collected and TCA precipitable counts determined.

#### 6.1.7. SEQUENCING OF CNTFR

Sequencing was performed using a kit (U.S. Biochemical) for dideoxy double stranded DNA using Sequenase™, according to the manufacturer's instructions.

-55-

6.1.8. INDIRECT  $^{125}\text{I}$  GOAT ANTI-MOUSE  
ANTIBODY BINDING ASSAY

COS cells were transfected with plasmid DNA from the library, the enriched library, or individual clones. After 48 hours, cells were incubated sequentially for 30 minutes  
5 on ice with PBS (with Ca, Mg)/5% FBS containing:

- 1) 1  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  CNTF-myc
- 2) 10  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  9E10;
- 3)  $^{125}\text{I}$  goat anti-mouse antibody (GaM) (0.5-1  
 $\mu\text{Ci/ml}$ ).

10 Cells were washed 3 x 5 minutes in PBS/5% FBS after each step. After the last wash, the plates were autoradiographed.

For the individual clones, a quantitative estimate of total radioactivity bound was made with a hand-held gamma  
15 counter.

6.2. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

6.2.1. RESTRICTION ANALYSIS

On restriction analysis, the 14 positive clones fell  
20 into four classes:

- a) I2=I7 (2kb)
  - b) I1=I5=I6 (2kb)
  - c) I4=I8=I9=I11=I14=I15 (4kb)
  - d) I10=I12=I13 (1.6kb)
- 25 (I3 was negative))

Members of each class produced an identical pattern of bands on digestion with the enzyme PstI. Further restriction analysis revealed that the four classes of clones overlapped, and preliminary sequence data confirmed  
30 that they shared overlapping sequences at their 5' ends. Curiously, class (b) proved to have its insert in the wrong orientation in the vector with respect to the eukaryotic promoter element. As can be seen from Table I, these clones were low expressors relative to the other clones.

35

Transcription in these clones may arise from a weak cryptic promoter in the region downstream of the vector's polylinker.

#### 6.2.2. IN VITRO TRANSCRIPTION AND TRANSLATION

5 To characterize the proteins coded for by the four classes of clones, they were all transcribed from the T7 promoter in the 5' region of the vector polylinker. After in vitro translation, the products were electrophoresed on a polyacrylamide gel. Class (a) produced no protein, since  
10 it is in the wrong orientation with respect to the T7 promoter. The other three classes all produced proteins of identical sizes (approximately 42 kd), verifying that they encoded the same protein.

15

TABLE I.

Quantitation of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -GaM binding in CNTFR clones.

	Clone	CPM bound
20	I1	2000
	I2	8500
	I3	600
	I4	9000
	I5	2000
	I6	1600
	I7	6000
25	I8	7500
	I9	7000
	I10	4500
	I11	7000
	I12	5000
	I13	8000
	I14	10000
30	I15	8000
	Negative Control	500
	Background	250

35

### 6.2.3. BINDING ANALYSIS WITH CNTF

The results of the indirect CNTF-myc binding assay using 9E10 anti-myc antibody and  $^{125}\text{I}$  goat anti-mouse antibody are shown in Figure 1B and 1C as well as in Table I. In Figure 1B, the plate on the left results from transfection of the unenriched library, while the plate on the right is from transfection of the enriched library plasmid DNA rescued after one round of panning (using approximately the same amount of DNA as for the unenriched library). Note the large number of dark spots seen only in the plate on the right, each representing a single COS cell expressing CNTF-myc binding site detected by radioautography.

For the individual positive clones discussed in Section 6.2.1, a quantitative estimate of total radioactivity was made with a hand-held gamma counter. The results of this assay for the individual clones I1-I15 are shown in Table I and demonstrate that 14 out of 15 clones express CNTF binding sites, as determined by indirect antibody binding assay. In addition, fragments of the plates from some of the individual clones were autoradiographed, as shown in Figure 1C.

A second demonstration of indirect binding utilized CNTF-myc followed by 9E10 antibody, FITC-labelled goat anti-mouse antibody, and FACS analysis, as shown in Figure 1D. COS cells transfected with positive clones demonstrated a 100-fold increase in expression of CNTFR as compared with cells transfected with negative clones.

The indirect binding data obtained using CNTF-myc was verified using direct  $^{125}\text{I}$ -CNTF binding, as shown in Table II. The receptor expressed on transfected COS cells specifically binds to iodinated CNTF as well as to the CNTF-myc ligand, as did the SH-SY5Y cells from which the CNTFR was cloned. Each transfected COS cell expresses about 30-fold more receptor per cell than SH-SY5Y cells.

TABLE II.  
Binding Analysis With Iodinated CNTF

5	Conc. $^{125}\text{I}$ -CNTF	<u>COS I2</u>		<u>SH-SY5Y</u>	
		Specific cpm bound	cpm/cell*	Specific cpm bound	cpm/cell
	2.16 nM	1412	$2.17 \times 10^{-2}$	1284	$4.28 \times 10^{-3}$

10

Monolayer binding assays were performed in 24 well culture plates using  $3 \times 10^5$  SH-SY5Y cells/well or  $6.5 \times 10^4$  COS cells/well. Specific cpm bound was calculated by subtracting cpm bound in the presence of 1000-fold excess of unlabelled CNTF from the cpm bound only in the presence of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -CNTF at the concentration indicated. No specific binding was detected in untransfected COS cells.

15

\*COS cells were assayed 48 hours after transfection by DEAE Dextran in which typically only 20-40% of the cells are transfected. Assuming 20% COS cells are transfected, the specific cpm bound indicate that each transfected COS cell expresses about 30-fold more receptors per cell than SH-SY5Y cells.

20

#### 6.2.4. SEQUENCE OF CNTFR AND HOMOLOGY TO OTHER GROWTH FACTOR RECEPTORS

25

The CNTFR contains motifs which are shared with a variety of other receptors. The extracellular portion of the CNTFR contains both an "immunoglobulin" domain at its N-terminus, as well as a "cytokine receptor" domain which is separated from the "immunoglobulin" domain by a short hinge region. Although many receptors have homology to either the "immunoglobulin" or "cytokine receptor" domains (Figure 3), only one receptor - the IL-6 receptor - shares the same particular arrangement of these domains with the

35



CNTFR (Figures 3 and 4). The IL-6 receptor is thus the protein most related to the CNTFR (Figure 4).

Interestingly, the IL-6 receptor is also similar to the CNTFR in that it has a very short intracytoplasmic domain which is apparently not required for initiating responses upon IL-6 binding (Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). Recently, a novel signal transducer for the IL-6 receptor, termed gp 130, was molecularly cloned. This transducer does not bind IL-6 by itself, but it does confer high affinity binding to the IL-6 receptor and it is required to transduce the IL-6 signal (Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). Our cloning of the CNTFR reveals that it shares important features with the IL-6 receptor that are not found in other known receptors, thus defining a new family of receptors. The similarities between IL-6R and CNTFR suggest that CNTFR is likely to utilize the same signal transducer as the IL-6 receptor, or a related molecule. Finally, the identification of CNTFR-related receptors should aid in the identification of novel ligands that would bind to these receptors.

## 7. EXAMPLE: TISSUE LOCALIZATION OF MESSAGE FOR CNTFR

### 7.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

#### 7.1.1. CNTFR PROBE PREPARATION

Molecular cloning of the coding region for hCNTFR into the pCMX expression vector is described in U. S. patent application entitled "Mammalian Expression Vector" filed concurrently herewith, and the resulting expression vector is depicted in Figure 6. A PCR probe extending from base 889 to base 1230 of the CNTFR sequences was synthesized and used as a probe for Northern analysis.

### 7.1.2. RNA PREPARATION AND NORTHERN BLOTS

Selected tissues were dissected from Sprague-Dawley rats and immediately frozen in liquid nitrogen. RNAs were isolated by homogenization of tissues in 3 M LiCl, 6 M urea, as described in Bothwell et al. 1990 (Methods of Cloning and Analysis of Eukaryotic Genes, Boston, MS, Jones and Bartlett). RNAs (10  $\mu$ g) were fractionated by electrophoresis through quadruplicate 1% agarose-formaldehyde gels (Bothwell et al., 1990, Methods of Cloning and Analysis of Eukaryotic Genes, Boston, MS, Jones and Bartlett) followed by capillary transfer to nylon membranes (MagnaGraph, Micron Separations Inc.) with 10xSSC (pH 7). RNAs were UV-cross-linked to the membranes by exposure to ultraviolet light (Stratalinker, Stratagen, Inc.) and hybridized at 68°C with radiolabeled probes in the presence of 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> (pH 7), 1% bovine serum albumin (fraction V, Sigma, Inc.) 7% SDS, 1 mM EDTA (Mahmoudi et al., 1989, Biotechniques 7:331-333), 100  $\mu$ g/ml sonicated, denatured salmon sperm DNA. Filters were washed at 68°C with 3xSSC, 0.1% SDS and subjected to autoradiography for 1 day to 2 weeks with one or two intensifying screens (Cronex, DuPont) and X-ray film (SAR-5, Kodak) at 70°C. Ethidium bromide staining of the gels demonstrated that equivalent levels of total RNA were being assayed for the different samples (as in Maisonpierre et al., 1990, Science 247:1446-1451).

### 7.2. RESULTS

As shown in Figure 5, CNTFR mRNA was detectable in tissues of the central nervous system at low levels in sciatic nerve and adrenals, and in muscle. This would indicate that CNTF possesses not only neurotrophic activity, but myotrophic activity as well, and may explain the involvement of both the central nervous system and muscle in certain disorders, such as Duchennes muscular

-61-

dystrophy and congenital myotonic dystrophy, in which patients may suffer from mental retardation. Expression of CNTFR in muscle suggests CNTF may have a role in muscle physiology. Thus, in addition to action on neurons, CNTF may have important action in muscle such as functioning as  
5 a myotrophic agent, or otherwise effect muscle development and/or differentiation.

8. EXAMPLE: EVIDENCE THAT THE CNTF RECEPTOR IS LINKED TO THE CELL SURFACE VIA A GLYCOSYL-PHOSPHATIDYLINOSITOL (GPI) LINKAGE

10

8.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

SH-SY5Y cells were cultured in a 24-well plate (Falcon) in RPMI supplemented with 10% inactivated fetal bovine serum. For experiments in which phospholipase (and  
15 control) treatments were done prior to CNTF-binding, the media was aspirated, cells were rinsed twice in PBS(+Ca/Mg), and then incubated with PBS(+Ca/Mg) supplemented with or without phosphatidylinositol-specific phospholipase (PI-PLC) at final concentration of 500 mU/ml  
20 (purchased from Boehringer Mannheim, catalogue # 1143-069) for 45 minutes at 37°C. Cells were then washed three times with binding buffer (PBS(+Ca/Mg) and 5% fetal bovine serum) and then incubated with 250 microliters binding buffer containing iodinated CNTF (approximately 100 picomolar)  
25 with or without a thousand-fold excess of unlabelled CNTF for 30 minutes at room temperature. For experiments in which the iodinated CNTF was bound prior to PI-PLC treatment, cells were first incubated in binding buffer containing iodinated CNTF with or without excess unlabelled  
30 CNTF at 37°C for 45 minutes. Cells were then washed two times with PBS(+Ca/Mg) and then incubated for 45 minutes with PBS(+Ca/Mg) supplemented with or without PI-PLC (final concentration 500 mU/ml). Cells were then rinsed three times with binding buffer. In all cases cells were

35

solubilized prior to counting in 0.1N NaOH, and then counted.

## 8.2. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

5 The sequence of the CNTF receptor revealed that the encoded protein ended within a hydrophobic region that followed the extra-cytoplasmic domains, without any apparent stop transfer sequence or intra-cytoplasmic domain. This structure seemed reminiscent of the C-terminals found on membrane proteins which lack  
10 transmembrane domains and are attached to the cell surface via GPI-linkages (Ferguson and Williams, 1988). Thus, experiments were performed to test whether the CNTF receptor was linked to the cell surface via a GPI-linkage. As shown in Table III, treatment of SH-SY5Y cells with PI-  
15 PLC completely eliminated the ability of SH-SY5Y cells to subsequently bind CNTF, consistent with the notion that the CNTF receptor is linked to the cell surface via a GPI-linkage. However, CNTF already bound to SH-SY5Y cells cannot be released by PI-PLC treatment (Table III).  
20 Interestingly, a soluble form of the IL-6 receptor can tightly associate with a second membrane protein (GP130) required for IL-6 signal transduction. Thus, prevention of CNTF receptor release by prior binding to CNTF may be due to an association between the CNTF, its receptor, and its  
25 signal transducer (GP130 or a GP130 analog). Alternatively, CNTF-binding may alter the structure of the CNTF receptor, making it less susceptible to PI-PLC (several GPI-linked proteins have PI-PLC resistant forms).  
30 The finding that the CNTF receptor is attached to the cell surface via a GPI-linkage has important ramifications. It represents the first known growth factor receptor to be linked to the membrane in this fashion, raising the possibility that additional receptors may be GPI-linked. Because several proteins have both GPI-linked forms as well  
35

as forms that contain conventional transmembrane domains, our findings raise the possibility that the CNTF receptor has an alternative C-terminus that could encode a transmembrane domain, and similarly that the IL-6 receptor has a GPI-linked form. The GPI-linked forms of growth factor receptors may be able to utilize novel mechanisms of receptor regulation and release. For example, down-regulation of surface receptors could rapidly occur by releasing the GPI-linked receptors by activating extra-cytoplasmic phospholipase activities. These released receptors might also act on other cells, either alone or when bound to CNTF in much the same way that soluble IL-6 receptor has been shown to bind IL-6 and activate cells expressing GP130.

The possibility that release of CNTF receptors using PI-PLC could block CNTF action may have important implications. It could be used to verify that observed effects of CNTF are due to the cloned CNTF receptor. Therapeutically, PI-PLC could be used to release CNTF receptors and possibly block CNTF action in cases where CNTF activity is thought to be detrimental.

If the CNTF-blockable PI-PLC release of the CNTF receptor is due to the formation of a tertiary complex between the CNTF, its receptor, and the potential signal transducing protein, then this feature of the receptor could be used to define and molecularly clone the transducing molecule.

30

35

TABLE III

Analysis Of PI-PLC Treatment  
On CNTF Binding To SH-SY5Y Cells

5

		CPM Bound	
		<u>No Cold Excess</u>	<u>Cold Excess</u>
<u>Pre-Treat with PI-PLC</u>			
10	No PI-PLC	1440	370
	With PI-PLC	420	310
<u>Bind CNTF Before PI-PLC</u>			
	No PI-PLC	1250	310
15	With PI-PLC	1060	300

#### 9. THE EFFECTS OF CNTF ON DENERVATED RAT SKELETAL MUSCLE IN VIVO

20 The goal of the experiments described herein was to  
examine the effects of purified recombinant CNTF on  
denervated skeletal muscle in vivo and to determine whether  
CNTF could prevent some of the phenotypic changes  
associated with denervation atrophy such as muscle weight  
and myofibrillar protein loss. We found that the CNTF  
25 receptor is expressed in skeletal muscle on both myotubes  
and myoblasts, and that CNTF prevents the loss of both  
muscle weight and myofibril protein content associated with  
denervation atrophy.

30

#### 9.1. THE CNTF RECEPTOR IS EXPRESSED IN SKELETAL MUSCLE ON BOTH MYOTUBES AND MYOBLASTS

Northern blot analysis was performed on RNA samples  
derived from a variety of rat tissues in order to identify  
the primary cellular targets of CNTF as shown in Figure 5.

35

A probe derived from the human CNTF receptor coding region identified a 2 kb transcript whose expression was generally restricted to the central nervous system, except for surprisingly high levels found in skeletal muscle and low levels in adrenal gland and sciatic nerve.

5 A more detailed analysis of the CNTF receptor expression specifically in skeletal muscle was carried out as described supra by Northern blotting using mRNA prepared from specific rat muscle types, purified human muscle myotubes, and several skeletal muscle cell lines of both  
10 mouse and rat origin (Figure 7). Using a human probe for the CNTF receptor, two mRNA species (2.0 and 1.7 kb) were detected in several muscle RNA samples. Figure 7 demonstrates that the CNTF receptor is expressed in both myotube and myoblast muscle cell lines of either mouse  
15 (lanes 1 and 2) or rat (lanes 3 and 4) origin, as well as in both red slow-twitch soleus muscle and white fast-twitch extensor digitorum longus (EDL) muscle of the rat (lanes 5 and 6, respectively). It appeared that the level of CNTF receptor mRNA was increased in both soleus (lane 12) and  
20 EDL muscle (lane 14) that were first denervated for 72 hours relative to their sham-operated contralateral controls (lanes 11 and 13 respectively). Interestingly, the highest level of expression was observed in RNA samples from myotubes derived from human fetal skeletal muscle.  
25 These myotubes were cultured and then purified away from fibroblasts and other non-muscle cells by fluorescence-activated cell sorting prior to RNA isolation (lane 8). We noted that two distinct CNTF receptor mRNA species were  
30 identified on the muscle cell Northern blot and that the 1.7 kb CNTF receptor message was preferentially expressed in the myoblast cell line C2C12 mb (lane 1) and may represent an alternatively spliced form of the receptor.

9.2. CNTF PREVENTS THE LOSS OF BOTH MUSCLE WEIGHT  
AND MYOFIBRILLAR PROTEIN CONTENT ASSOCIATED  
WITH DENERVATION ATROPHY

9.2.1. DENERVATION SURGERY

The various animal groups used for these studies are  
5 described in Table IV, infra. Generally, three animals  
comprised a single group. For all experimental groups, an  
initial incision of approximately 20 cm was made through  
the skin of the right hindlimb at midhigh level.  
Following this surgical procedure, the 20 cm cut was also  
10 performed on the left hindlimb at midhigh in order to  
carry out the sham-operation.

In animal groups 2-6, the soleus muscle of the right  
hindlimb was denervated by surgically removing a 2-5 mm  
segment of the right sciatic nerve at midhigh level to  
15 leave a distal nerve stump of 32 to 35 mm (labeled as A in  
Figure 8). The left soleus muscle served as the control in  
that a sham-operation was performed on this muscle by  
gently pulling on the sciatic nerve 32 to 35 mm from its  
point of innervation of the soleus muscle. All surgeries  
20 were carried out while the animals were under light  
chloro-pentobarbital anesthesia (0.3 g/kg). Animal group 1  
(controls) did not receive any denervation and were not  
injected. All animals weighed between 100 and 150 grams.

9.2.2. TREATMENTS

25 Animals in groups 1 and 2 were not treated. Animals  
in group 3 were injected daily for a total of 4 days  
intramuscular (IM) with phosphate-buffered saline (PBS)  
containing 1 mg/ml of BSA (PBS/BSA). Multiple injections  
30 were made into the muscles of the midhigh on both sides of  
the animals. Animals in group 4 were injected daily for 4  
days IM with recombinant rat CNTF (1 mg/kg) containing 1  
mg/ml of BSA (CNTF/BSA). Multiple injections were made on  
both sides of the animal as described above. Animals in

35



group 5 were also injected daily with rCNTF/BSA but subcutaneously (SC) rather than IM. Animals in group 6 were injected daily (SC) with PBS/BSA.

TABLE IV

5

Group	# Animals	Surgical Protocol	Denervation Time	Treatment
1	3	None	96 hours	None
2	3	R-Den/L-Sham	96 hours	None
10 3	3	R-Den/L-Sham	96 hours	PBS/BSA (1 mg/ml)
4	3	R-Den/L-Sham	96 hours	CNTF/BSA (1 mg/kg) (IM)
5	3	R-Den/L-Sham	96 hours	CNTF/BSA (1 mg/kg) (SC)
6	3	R-Den/L-Sham	96 hours	PBS/BSA (SC)

15-Den=right hindlimb denervated; L-Sham=left hindlimb sham-operated

### 9.2.3. MUSCLE WEIGHT AND PROTEIN ANALYSIS

96 hours after the denervation surgery was performed, the animals were sacrificed by decapitation, and the soleus muscles were carefully excised from tendon to tendon. The soleus muscles were placed on a weigh boat on ice, tendons were removed with a scalpel, and the muscles were then weighed immediately so as to prevent any drying. To prepare myofibrillar protein homogenates, the excised soleus muscles were pooled, minced while on ice in a cold room, and then homogenized in PBS containing 0.32 M sucrose and 3 mM  $MgCl_2$  (2.5% w/v). The homogenate was centrifuged at approximately 800 x g and the supernatants were assayed for total myofibril protein per muscle by using the Bio-Rad Dye Binding procedure according to the manufacturers recommendations.

Figure 9 demonstrates that denervated soleus muscle decreased significantly ( $p < 0.01$ ) in wet weight

35

approximately 25% at 96 hours. Daily injection of PBS/BSA had no effect on this denervation-dependent muscle weight loss. However, denervated soleus muscles from rats injected daily with CNTF (1 mg/kg)/BSA weighed approximately 5% less than their contralateral sham-operated controls. The wet weights of the CNTF treated denervated and sham-operated soleus muscles were not significantly different from unoperated controls. CNTF, when injected SC daily for 4 days (group 5), also appeared to significantly prevent the denervation-induced loss of myofibrillar protein, and the loss of protein paralleled the decrease in muscle wet weight (Table V).

15

20

25

30

35

TABLE V

5 Effect Of CNTF On Denervated Soleus Muscle Protein Content

	<u>Muscle Sample</u>	<u>Total Myofibril Protein (mg per Muscle)</u>	<u>% of Sham</u>
10	Group 1 - No denervation	7.5	
	Group 2 - den. - no injection	5.8	80
	- sham - no injection	7.2	
15	Group 3 - den+PBS (IM)	5.2	75
	- sham+PBS (IM)	6.9	
	Group 4 - den+CNTF (IM)	6.5	83
	- sham+CNTF (IM)	7.8	
20	Group 5 - den+CNTF (SC)	6.6	93
	- sham+CNTF (SC)	7.1	
	Group 6 - den+PBS (SC)	5.3	67
25	- sham+PBS (SC)	7.9	

(IM) = intramuscular injection; (SC) = subcutaneous injection; data presented represent the total protein content of 3 pooled soleus muscles

30

When injected daily IM, a less pronounced effect of CNTF on total myofibril protein was observed.

35

We found that the CNTF receptor is expressed in skeletal muscle on both myotubes and myoblasts, and that CNTF prevents the loss of both muscle weight and myofibril protein content associated with denervation atrophy.

5

#### 10. DEPOSIT OF MICROORGANISM

The following deposit has been made on March 26, 1991 with The Agricultural Research Culture Collection (NRRL), 1815 North University Street, Peoria, Illinois, 61604:

10 E. coli carrying plasmid pCMX-hCNTFR (I2), an expression plasmid comprising hCNTFR encoding sequences, assigned accession number NRRL B-18789.

15 Various references are cited herein, the disclosures of which are incorporated by reference in their entireties.

20 The present invention is not to be limited in scope by the construct deposited or the embodiments disclosed in the examples which are intended as illustrations of a few aspects of the invention and any embodiments which are functionally equivalent are within the scope of this invention. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art and are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

25

30

35

International Application No: PCT/

/

MICROORGANISMS	
Optional Sheet in connection with the microorganism referred to on page <u>70</u> , line <u>5</u> of the description *	
A. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT *	
Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet <input type="checkbox"/> *	
Name of depositary institution *	
Agricultural Research Culture Collection	
Address of depositary institution (including postal code and country) *	
1815 North University Street Peoria, Illinois 61604	
Date of deposit *	Accession Number *
March 26, 1991	NRRL B-18789
B. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS * (leave blank if not applicable). This information is continued on a separate attached sheet <input type="checkbox"/>	
C. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE * (If the indications are not for all designated States)	
D. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS * (leave blank if not applicable)	
The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later * (Specify the general nature of the indications e.g., "Accession Number of Deposit")	
E. <input type="checkbox"/> This sheet was received with the International application when filed (to be checked by the receiving Office)	
_____ (Authorized Officer)	
<input type="checkbox"/> The date of receipt (from the applicant) by the International Bureau *	
_____ (Authorized Officer)	

Form PCT/RO/131 (January 1981)

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A substantially pure nucleic acid molecule encoding a CNTF receptor.
- 5 2. The nucleic acid molecule of claim 1 having a nucleic acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1) or a fragment thereof that is at least six nucleotides in length.
- 10 3. The nucleic acid molecule of claim 2 which is a cDNA.
4. A substantially pure nucleic acid molecule comprising at least a six nucleotide portion of the  
15 nucleic acid sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1).
5. A substantially pure nucleic acid molecule comprising at least a six nucleotide portion of the nucleic acid sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1)  
20 but carrying a mutation.
6. A substantially pure second nucleic acid molecule comprising a hybridizable portion of a first nucleic acid molecule which has a sequence substantially as depicted in  
25 Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1).
7. A substantially pure nucleic acid molecule which encodes a protein having the amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2), or a  
30 portion thereof consisting of at least six amino acids or a derivative thereof.
8. An organism containing the nucleic acid molecule of claim 1, 2, or 7.  
35

- 73 -

9. The organism of claim 8 which is a microorganism.

10. The microorganism of claim 9 which is a bacterium.

11. The microorganism of claim 9 which is a yeast.

12. The organism of claim 8 which is a transgenic animal.

13. A cell containing the nucleic acid molecule of claim 1, 2, or 7.

14. An immortalized cell line containing the nucleic acid of claim 1, 2, or 7.

15. The nucleic acid molecule of claim 1, 2, or 7 which further comprises a nucleic acid sequence capable of controlling gene expression.

16. A substantially pure CNTF receptor molecule comprising the amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2), or a portion consisting of at least six amino acids thereof.

17. A monoclonal antibody which recognizes the CNTFR of claim 16.

18. A method for identifying a cell which binds to CNTF comprising detecting the expression of CNTF receptor by the cell.

19. The method of claim 18 further comprising detecting the presence of CNTF receptor-encoding RNA by

hybridizing a sample from the cell suspected of containing CNTF-receptor encoding RNA to a nucleic acid probe, which probe comprises at least a six nucleotide portion of the sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1).

5           20. The method of claim 18 further comprising detecting the presence of CNTF receptor protein by (i) exposing the cell to anti-CNTF receptor antibody under conditions which would permit immunospecific binding to  
10       ~~occur and~~ then (ii) detecting the binding of antibody to the cell.

          21. An assay system for the screening of pharmaceutical compounds for CNTF activity comprising  
15       cells which contain a recombinant nucleic acid molecule that comprises a nucleic acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1) or a fragment thereof that is at least six nucleotides in length.

20           22. An assay system for the screening of pharmaceutical compounds for CNTF activity comprising cells which express recombinant CNTF receptor protein or a functionally active portion thereof.

25           23. The assay system of claim 22 in which the recombinant CNTF receptor protein comprises an amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) or a fragment thereof that is at least six amino acids in length.

30           24. An experimental model system for studying the physiology of CNTF comprising cells which contain recombinant nucleic acid encoding a CNTF receptor and which express, on their surface, an increased number of  
35       CNTF receptors relative to the same type of cells which do



not contain recombinant nucleic acid encoding a CNTF receptor.

25. The experimental model system of claim 24 which is a transgenic animal.

5

26. A non-human transgenic animal that carries a transgene that encodes a recombinant CNTF receptor that is not associated with a cell surface.

10

27. A non-human transgenic animal that carries a transgene that encodes a recombinant CNTF receptor that is ineffective in transducing a biological response to CNTF.

15

28. A method of diagnosing a CNTF-related disorder in a patient comprising detecting a difference in the amount of CNTF receptor in cells or tissue from the patient relative to the amount of CNTF receptor in comparable cells or tissue from a healthy person.

20

29. A method of diagnosing a CNTF-related disorder in a patient comprising detecting a difference in the amount of CNTF receptor or fragment thereof in fluid from the patient relative to the amount of CNTF receptor or fragment thereof in comparable fluid from a healthy person.

25

30. A method of diagnosing a CNTF-related disorder in a patient comprising detecting a difference in the amount of CNTF receptor RNA in a sample from the patient relative to the amount of CNTF receptor RNA in a comparable sample from a healthy person.

30

31. The method of claim 30 in which the amount of CNTF receptor RNA is measured by hybridizing a sample

35

containing nucleic acid to a nucleic acid probe which comprises at least a six nucleotide portion of the sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1).

5        32. The method of claim 30 in which the amount of CNTF receptor or fragment thereof is measured by (i) exposing the cells or tissue to anti-CNTF receptor antibody under conditions which allow immunospecific binding to CNTF receptor to occur and (ii) measuring the amount of antibody binding.

10       33. The method of claim 30 in which the amount of CNTF receptor is measured by (i) exposing the cells or tissue to tagged CNTF under conditions which allow binding to CNTF receptor to occur and (ii) measuring the amount of tagged CNTF.

20       34. A method of treating a patient suffering from a neurologic disorder comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of CNTF receptor protein, or a functionally active peptide fragment or derivative thereof.

25       35. The method of claim 34 in which the CNTF receptor protein, peptide fragment, or derivative is able to bind CNTF.

36. The method of claim 34 in which the CNTF receptor is administered to produce a local effect.

30       37. A method of treating a patient suffering from a neurologic disorder comprising administering to the patient a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence which encodes CNTF receptor or a functionally active portion thereof, such that the nucleotide sequence

35

- 77 -

is expressed within the patient to produce a therapeutically effective amount of CNTF receptor or portion thereof.

5 38. The method of claim 34, 35 or 36 in which the neurologic disorder is trauma.

39. The method of claim 34 in which the neurologic disorder is a disorder of motorneurons.

10 40. The method of claim 39 in which the disorder is amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.

15 41. A pharmaceutical composition comprising CNTF receptor protein, peptide fragments, or derivatives thereof; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

20 42. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a protein having an amino acid sequence comprising an amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) or a six amino acid portion thereof; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

25 43. A method of identifying molecules related to the CNTF receptor which are members of the family of molecules which include the IL-6 receptor comprising:

- (i) screening a DNA library for clones which hybridize to portions of CNTF receptor-encoding nucleic acid;
- 30 (ii) isolating and propagating clones which hybridize to CNTF receptor encoding nucleic acid;
- (iii) determining the nucleic acid sequence of the clones isolated and propagated in step (ii);
- 35 and

- (iv) comparing the nucleic acid sequences determined in step (iii) with the nucleic acid sequences of known members of the family.

5 44. A method of treating a patient suffering from a muscle cell disorder comprising administering to the patient a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence which encodes CNTF receptor or a functionally active portion thereof, such that the nucleotide sequence is expressed within the patient to produce a  
10 therapeutically effective amount of CNTF receptor or portion thereof.

15 45. A substantially pure molecule other than CNTF which competes with CNTF for binding to the CNTF receptor.

46. A model system for an autoimmune disease comprising an animal that has been immunized with an immunogenic amount of CNTF receptor.

20 47. A substantially pure second nucleic acid molecule complementary to the nucleic acid molecule of claim 1.

25 48. A substantially pure second nucleic acid molecule complementary to the nucleic acid molecule or fragment of claim 2.

30 49. A composition of substantially purified cells which express recombinant CNTF receptor protein or a functionally active portion thereof.

35 50. A method of treating a patient suffering from a neuromuscular or muscle disorder comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of CNTF protein or a functionally active portion or derivative thereof.

- 79. -

51. A method of treating a patient with a disorder of a type of tissue or cell comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of CNTF protein or a functionally active portion or derivative thereof, in which the type of tissue or cell in the patient or in a normal individual expresses a CNTF receptor protein.

52. The method of claim 50 in which the disorder involves muscle atrophy.

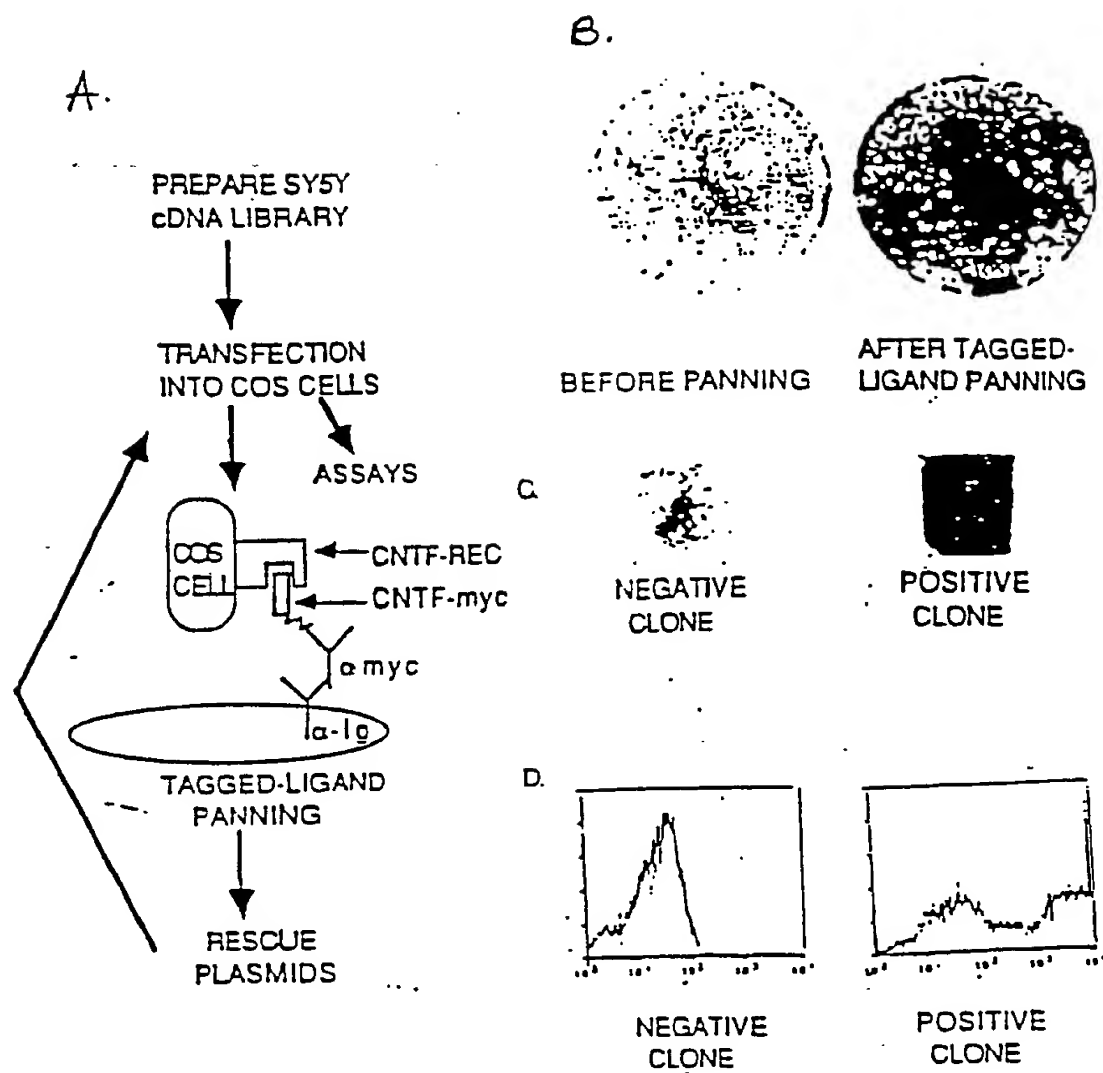
53. The method of claim 52 in which the atrophy results from a condition selected from the group consisting of denervation, chronic disuse, metabolic stress and nutritional insufficiency.

54. The method of claim 52 in which the atrophy results from a condition selected from the group consisting of muscular dystrophy syndrome, congenital myopathy, inflammatory disease of muscle, and toxic myopathy.

55. The method of claim 52 in which the atrophy results from a condition selected from the group consisting of nerve trauma, peripheral neuropathy, drug or toxin-induced damage, or motor neuronopathy.

56. A nucleic acid comprising a CNTF receptor nucleic acid sequence as contained in plasmid pCMX-hCNTFR, deposited with the NRRL and having accession number B-18789.

FIG. 1



10 110 120 130 140 150 160 170 180 190 200 210 220 230 240 250 260 270 280 290 300 310 320 330 340 350 360 370 380 390 400 410 420 430 440 450 460 470 480 490 500 510 520 530 540 550 560 570 580 590 600 610 620 630 640 650 660 670 680 690 700 710 720 730 740 750 760 770 780 790 800 810 820 830 840 850 860 870 880 890 900 910 920 930 940 950 960 970 980 990 1000 1010 1020 1030 1040 1050 1060 1070 1080 1090 1100 1110 1120 1130 1140 1150 1160 1170 1180 1190 1200 1210 1220 1230 1240 1250 1260 1270 1280 1290 1300 1310 1320 1330 1340 1350 1360 1370 1380 1390 1400 1410 1420 1430 1440 1450 1460 1470 1480 1490 1500 1510 1520 1530 1540 1550 1560 1570 1580 1590 1600 1610 1620 1630 1640 1650 1660 1670 1680 1690 1700 1710 1720 1730 1740 1750 1760 1770 1780 1790 1800 1810 1820 1830 1840 1850 1860 1870 1880 1890 1900 1910 1920 1930 1940 1950 1960 1970 1980 1990 2000 2010 2020 2030 2040 2050 2060 2070 2080 2090 2100 2110 2120 2130 2140 2150 2160 2170 2180 2190 2200 2210 2220 2230 2240 2250 2260 2270 2280 2290 2300 2310 2320 2330 2340 2350 2360 2370 2380 2390 2400 2410 2420 2430 2440 2450 2460 2470 2480 2490 2500 2510 2520 2530 2540 2550 2560 2570 2580 2590 2600 2610 2620 2630 2640 2650 2660 2670 2680 2690 2700 2710 2720 2730 2740 2750 2760 2770 2780 2790 2800 2810 2820 2830 2840 2850 2860 2870 2880 2890 2900 2910 2920 2930 2940 2950 2960 2970 2980 2990 3000 3010 3020 3030 3040 3050 3060 3070 3080 3090 3100 3110 3120 3130 3140 3150 3160 3170 3180 3190 3200 3210 3220 3230 3240 3250 3260 3270 3280 3290 3300 3310 3320 3330 3340 3350 3360 3370 3380 3390 3400 3410 3420 3430 3440 3450 3460 3470 3480 3490 3500 3510 3520 3530 3540 3550 3560 3570 3580 3590 3600 3610 3620 3630 3640 3650 3660 3670 3680 3690 3700 3710 3720 3730 3740 3750 3760 3770 3780 3790 3800 3810 3820 3830 3840 3850 3860 3870 3880 3890 3900 3910 3920 3930 3940 3950 3960 3970 3980 3990 4000 4010 4020 4030 4040 4050 4060 4070 4080 4090 4100 4110 4120 4130 4140 4150 4160 4170 4180 4190 4200 4210 4220 4230 4240 4250 4260 4270 4280 4290 4300 4310 4320 4330 4340 4350 4360 4370 4380 4390 4400 4410 4420 4430 4440 4450 4460 4470 4480 4490 4500 4510 4520 4530 4540 4550 4560 4570 4580 4590 4600 4610 4620 4630 4640 4650 4660 4670 4680 4690 4700 4710 4720 4730 4740 4750 4760 4770 4780 4790 4800 4810 4820 4830 4840 4850 4860 4870 4880 4890 4900 4910 4920 4930 4940 4950 4960 4970 4980 4990 5000 5010 5020 5030 5040 5050 5060 5070 5080 5090 5100 5110 5120 5130 5140 5150 5160 5170 5180 5190 5200 5210 5220 5230 5240 5250 5260 5270 5280 5290 5300 5310 5320 5330 5340 5350 5360 5370 5380 5390 5400 5410 5420 5430 5440 5450 5460 5470 5480 5490 5500 5510 5520 5530 5540 5550 5560 5570 5580 5590 5600 5610 5620 5630 5640 5650 5660 5670 5680 5690 5700 5710 5720 5730 5740 5750 5760 5770 5780 5790 5800 5810 5820 5830 5840 5850 5860 5870 5880 5890 5900 5910 5920 5930 5940 5950 5960 5970 5980 5990 6000 6010 6020 6030 6040 6050 6060 6070 6080 6090 6100 6110 6120 6130 6140 6150 6160 6170 6180 6190 6200 6210 6220 6230 6240 6250 6260 6270 6280 6290 6300 6310 6320 6330 6340 6350 6360 6370 6380 6390 6400 6410 6420 6430 6440 6450 6460 6470 6480 6490 6500 6510 6520 6530 6540 6550 6560 6570 6580 6590 6600 6610 6620 6630 6640 6650 6660 6670 6680 6690 6700 6710 6720 6730 6740 6750 6760 6770 6780 6790 6800 6810 6820 6830 6840 6850 6860 6870 6880 6890 6900 6910 6920 6930 6940 6950 6960 6970 6980 6990 7000 7010 7020 7030 7040 7050 7060 7070 7080 7090 7100 7110 7120 7130 7140 7150 7160 7170 7180 7190 7200 7210 7220 7230 7240 7250 7260 7270 7280 7290 7300 7310 7320 7330 7340 7350 7360 7370 7380 7390 7400 7410 7420 7430 7440 7450 7460 7470 7480 7490 7500 7510 7520 7530 7540 7550 7560 7570 7580 7590 7600 7610 7620 7630 7640 7650 7660 7670 7680 7690 7700 7710 7720 7730 7740 7750 7760 7770 7780 7790 7800 7810 7820 7830 7840 7850 7860 7870 7880 7890 7900 7910 7920 7930 7940 7950 7960 7970 7980 7990 8000 8010 8020 8030 8040 8050 8060 8070 8080 8090 8100 8110 8120 8130 8140 8150 8160 8170 8180 8190 8200 8210 8220 8230 8240 8250 8260 8270 8280 8290 8300 8310 8320 8330 8340 8350 8360 8370 8380 8390 8400 8410 8420 8430 8440 8450 8460 8470 8480 8490 8500 8510 8520 8530 8540 8550 8560 8570 8580 8590 8600 8610 8620 8630 8640 8650 8660 8670 8680 8690 8700 8710 8720 8730 8740 8750 8760 8770 8780 8790 8800 8810 8820 8830 8840 8850 8860 8870 8880 8890 8900 8910 8920 8930 8940 8950 8960 8970 8980 8990 9000 9010 9020 9030 9040 9050 9060 9070 9080 9090 9100 9110 9120 9130 9140 9150 9160 9170 9180 9190 9200 9210 9220 9230 9240 9250 9260 9270 9280 9290 9300 9310 9320 9330 9340 9350 9360 9370 9380 9390 9400 9410 9420 9430 9440 9450 9460 9470 9480 9490 9500 9510 9520 9530 9540 9550 9560 9570 9580 9590 9600 9610 9620 9630 9640 9650 9660 9670 9680 9690 9700 9710 9720 9730 9740 9750 9760 9770 9780 9790 9800 9810 9820 9830 9840 9850 9860 9870 9880 9890 9900 9910 9920 9930 9940 9950 9960 9970 9980 9990 10000 10010 10020 10030 10040 10050 10060 10070 10080 10090 10100 10110 10120 10130 10140 10150 10160 10170 10180 10190 10200 10210 10220 10230 10240 10250 10260 10270 10280 10290 10300 10310 10320 10330 10340 10350 10360 10370 10380 10390 10400 10410 10420 10430 10440 10450 10460 10470 10480 10490 10500 10510 10520 10530 10540 10550 10560 10570 10580 10590 10600 10610 10620 10630 10640 10650 10660 10670 10680 10690 10700 10710 10720 10730 10740 10750 10760 10770 10780 10790 10800 10810 10820 10830 10840 10850 10860 10870 10880 10890 10900 10910 10920 10930 10940 10950 10960 10970 10980 10990 11000 11010 11020 11030 11040 11050 11060 11070 11080 11090 11100 11110 11120 11130 11140 11150 11160 11170 11180 11190 11200 11210 11220 11230 11240 11250 11260 11270 11280 11290 11300 11310 11320 11330 11340 11350 11360 11370 11380 11390 11400 11410 11420 11430 11440 11450 11460 11470 11480 11490 11500 11510 11520 11530 11540 11550 11560 11570 11580 11590 11600 11610 11620 11630 11640 11650 11660 11670 11680 11690 11700 11710 11720 11730 11740 11750 11760 11770 11780 11790 11800 11810 11820 11830 11840 11850 11860 11870 11880 11890 11900 11910 11920 11930 11940 11950 11960 11970 11980 11990 12000 12010 12020 12030 12040 12050 12060 12070 12080 12090 12100 12110 12120 12130 12140 12150 12160 12170 12180 12190 12200 12210 12220 12230 12240 12250 12260 12270 12280 12290 12300 12310 12320 12330 12340 12350 12360 12370 12380 12390 12400 12410 12420 12430 12440 12450 12460 12470 12480 12490 12500 12510 12520 12530 12540 12550 12560 12570 12580 12590 12600 12610 12620 12630 12640 12650 12660 12670 12680 12690 12700 12710 12720 12730 12740 12750 12760 12770 12780 12790 12800 12810 12820 12830 12840 12850 12860 12870 12880 12890 12900 12910 12920 12930 12940 12950 12960 12970 12980 12990 13000 13010 13020 13030 13040 13050 13060 13070 13080 13090 13100 13110 13120 13130 13140 13150 13160 13170 13180 13190 13200 13210 13220 13230 13240 13250 13260 13270 13280 13290 13300 13310 13320 13330 13340 13350 13360 13370 13380 13390 13400 13410 13420 13430 13440 13450 13460 13470 13480 13490 13500 13510 13520 13530 13540 13550 13560 13570 13580 13590 13600 13610 13620 13630 13640 13650 13660 13670 13680 13690 13700 13710 13720 13730 13740 13750 13760 13770 13780 13790 13800 13810 13820 13830 13840 13850 13860 13870 13880 13890 13900 13910 13920 13930 13940 13950 13960 13970 13980 13990 14000 14010 14020 14030 14040 14050 14060 14070 14080 14090 14100 14110 14120 14130 14140 14150 14160 14170 14180 14190 14200 14210 14220 14230 14240 14250 14260 14270 14280 14290 14300 14310 14320 14330 14340 14350 14360 14370 14380 14390 14400 14410 14420 14430 14440 14450 14460 14470 14480 14490 14500 14510 14520 14530 14540 14550 14560 14570 14580 14590 14600 14610 14620 14630 14640 14650 14660 14670 14680 14690 14700 14710 14720 14730 14740 14750 14760 14770 14780 14790 14800 14810 14820 14830 14840 14850 14860 14870 14880 14890 14900 14910 14920 14930 14940 14950 14960 14970 14980 14990 15000 15010 15020 15030 15040 15050 15060 15070 15080 15090 15100 15110 15120 15130 15140 15150 15160 15170 15180 15190 15200 15210 15220 15230 15240 15250 15260 15270 15280 15290 15300 15310 15320 15330 15340 15350 15360 15370 15380 15390 15400 15410 15420 15430 15440 15450 15460 15470 15480 15490 15500 15510 15520 15530 15540 15550 15560 15570 15580 15590 15600 15610 15620 15630 15640 15650 15660 15670 15680 15690 15700 15710 15720 15730 15740 15750 15760 15770 15780 15790 15800 15810 15820 15830 15840 15850 15860 15870 15880 15890 15900 15910 15920 15930 15940 15950 15960 15970 15980 15990 16000 16010 16020 16030 16040 16050 16060 16070 16080 16090 16100 16110 16120 16130 16140 16150 16160 16170 16180 16190 16200 16210 16220 16230 16240 16250 16260 16270 16280 16290 16300 16310 16320 16330 16340 16350 16360 16370 16380 16390 16400 16410 16420 16430 16440 16450 16460 16470 16480 16490 16500 16510 16520 16530 16540 16550 16560 16570 16580 16590 16600 16610 16620 16630 16640 16650 16660 16670 16680 16690 16700 16710 16720 16730 16740 16750 16760 16770 16780 16790 16800 16810 16820 16830 16840 16850 16860 16870 16880 16890 16900 16910 16920 16930 16940 16950 16960 16970 16980 16990 17000 17010 17020 17030 17040 17050 17060 17070 17080 17090 17100 17110 17120 17130 17140 17150 17160 17170 17180 17190 17200 17210 17220 17230 17240 17250 17260 17270 17280 17290 17300 17310 17320 17330 17340 17350 17360 17370 17380 17390 17400 17410 17420 17430 17440 17450 17460 17470 17480 17490 17500 17510 17520 17530 17540 17550 17560 17570 17580 17590 17600 17610 17620 17630 17640 17650 17660 17670 17680 17690 17700 17710 17720 17730 17740 17750 17760 17770 17780 17790 17800 17810 17820 17830 17840 17850 17860 17870 17880 17890 17900 17910 17920 17930 17940 17950 17960 17970 17980 17990 18000 18010 18020 18030 18040 18050 18060 18070 18080 18090 18100 18110 18120 18130 18140 18150 18160 18170 18180 18190 18200 18210 18220 18230 18240 18250 18260 18270 18280 18290 18300 18310 18320 18330 18340 18350 18360 18370 18380 18390 18400 18410 18420 18430 18440 18450 18460 18470 18480 18490 18500 18510 18520 18530 18540 18550 18560 18570 18580 18590 18600 18610 18620 18630 18640 18650 18660 18670 18680 18690 18700 18710 18720 18730 18740 18750 18760 18770 18780 18790 18800 18810 18820 18830 18840 18850 18860 18870 18880 18890 18900 18910 18920 18930 18940 18950 18960 18970 18980 18990 19000 19010 19020 19030 19040 19050 19060 19070 19080 19090 19100 19110 19120 19130 19140 19150 19160 19170 19180 19190 19200 19210 19220 19230 19240 19250 19260 19270 19280 19290 19300 19310 19320 19330 19340 19350 19360 19370 19380 19390 19400 19410 19420 19430 19440 19450 19460 19470 19480 19490 19500 19510 19520 19530 19540 19550 19560 19570 19580 19590 19600 19610 19620 19630 19640 19650 19660 19670 19680 19690 19700 19710 19720 19730 19740 19750 19760 19770 19780 19790 19800 19810 19820 19830 19840 19850 19860 19870 19880 19890 19900 19910 19920 19930 19940 19950 19960 19970 19980 19990 20000 20010 20020 20030 20040 20050 20060 20070 20080 20090 20100 20110 20120 20130 20140 20150 20160 20170 20180 20190 20200 20210 20220 20230 20240 20250 20260 20270 20280 20290 20300 20310 20320 20330 20340 20350 20360 20370 20380 20390 20400 20410 20420 20430 20440 20450 20460 20470 20480 20490 20500 20510 20520 20530 20540 20550 20560 20570 20580 20590 20600 20610 20620 20630 20640 20650 20660 20670 20680 20690 20700 20710 20720 20730 20740 20750 20760 20770 20780 20790 20800 20810 20820 20830 20840 20850 20860 20870 20880 20890 20900 20910 20920 20930 20940 20950 20960 20970 20980 20990 21000 21010 21020 21030 21040 21050 21060 21070 21080 21090 21100 21110 21120 21130 21140 21150 21160 21170 21180 21190 21200 21210 21220 21230 21240 21250 21260 21270 21280 21290 21300 21310 21320 21330 21340 21350 21360 21370 21380 21390 21400 21410 21420 21430 21440 21450 21460 21470 21480 21490 21500 21510 21520 21530 21540 21550 21560 21570 21580 21590 21600 21610 21620 21630 21640 21650 21660 21670 21680 21690 21700 21710 21720 21730 21740 21750 21760 21770 21780 21790 21800 21810 21820 21830 21840 21850 21860 21870 21880 21890 21900 21910 21920 21930 21940 21950 21960 21970 21980 21990 22000 22010 22020 22030 22040 22050 22060 22070 22080 22090 22100 22110 22120 22130 22140 22150 22160 22170 22180 22190 22200 22210 22220 22230 22240 22250 22260

# CNTF RECEPTOR HOMOLOGIES

## IMMUNOGLOBULIN-LIKE DOMAIN

hCNTF	42	VTIP	C	-8 aa-	V T M	---	R V	-13aa-	Q	L V	L	HGLELGH	G	L Y A	C F
hIL6R	43	VTLT	C	-10aa-	V H M	VL-	R R	-15aa-	R	L L	L	RSVQLHDS	G	N Y S	C Y
hCD4	61:	LMS	C	-9 aa-	V S M	---	R I	-9 aa-	V	L F I	I	AKITPNN	G	T Y A	C F
PDGFR		ITIR	C	-9 aa-	F Q W	TTP	R M	-22aa-	I	L H I	I	PTAELSDS	G	T Y T	C N
CST-1R		AOIV	C	-8 aa-	F D V	SL-	R H	-22aa-	J	L M L	L	DRVSTQDA	G	N Y S	C T
ALPHA 1 B-CF		VTLT	C	-8 aa-	F Q L	---	R R	-18aa-	F F H	L	L	NAVALGEG	G	N Y T	C R

## CYTOKINE RECEPTOR-LIKE DOMAIN

hCNTF	116	C	RSMTYTKGSY	C	S W	-24aa-	C	-9 aa-	C	-33aa-	FDETTI	V	KDP	P	EN	V	VADPVPSPRRLE	V	T M	-53aa-	V	AAK	---	DNEIGT	MS	D	MS	
hIL6R	121	C	FRKSPLSNV	C	E W	-30aa-	C	-10aa-	C	-32aa-	FDCCGI	L	QDP	P	AN	I	TVTAVARNPRMIS	V	T M	-50aa-	V	VOLRADEEFGGE	MS	E	MS			
hIL6R	31	C	RSPD-KETTT	C	F W	-26aa-	C	-10aa-	C	-33aa-	VDTYI	V	EPE	P	RN	L	TLEVKOLDKATT	L	-	-	-	V	OTRCKPDH	---	GY	MS	R	MS
hIL2R	52	C	FTOR-LEDIV	C	F W	-25aa-	C	-15aa-	C	-29aa-	ININEV	V	LLDA	P	AG	L	-LARRAEESGSHV	L	R M	-53aa-	V	RAWNA	EPSTSGF	MS	A	MS		
hIL2R	36	C	FTNS-RANIS	C	V W	-25aa-	C	-11aa-	C	-37aa-	FRUFEN	L	RLMA	P	IS	L	OV-VWVETURON	I	S M	-55aa-	V	RVKPL	---	OCETTT	MS	P	MS	
hIL1AR	34	C	FSDY-IRIST	C	E W	-28aa-	C	-11aa-	C	-28aa-	FSPSCH	V	KPLA	P	DW	L	TLRTWSD-EML	-	L T M	-57aa-	V	RVRS	---	OILTGT	MS	E	MS	
hIL2R	126	C	FTTN-ADIAN	C	T W	-26aa-	C	-12aa-	C	-31aa-	LDTNKL	E	RNP	P	SN	V	TV	---	KNTHTCL	V R M	-56aa-	V	KIRAA-D-VRLM	MS	S	MS		

FIG. 3



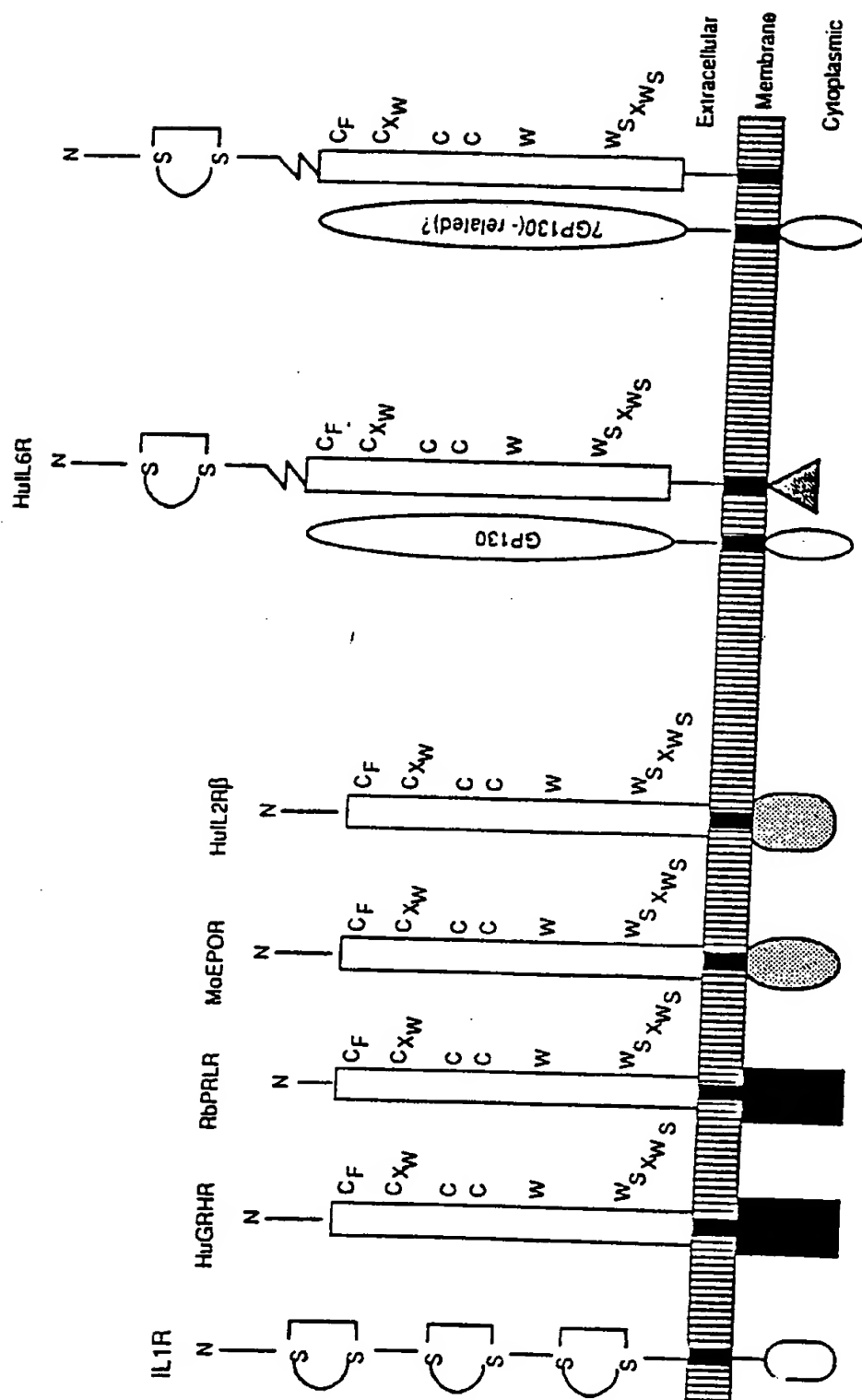


FIG. 4

FIG. 5

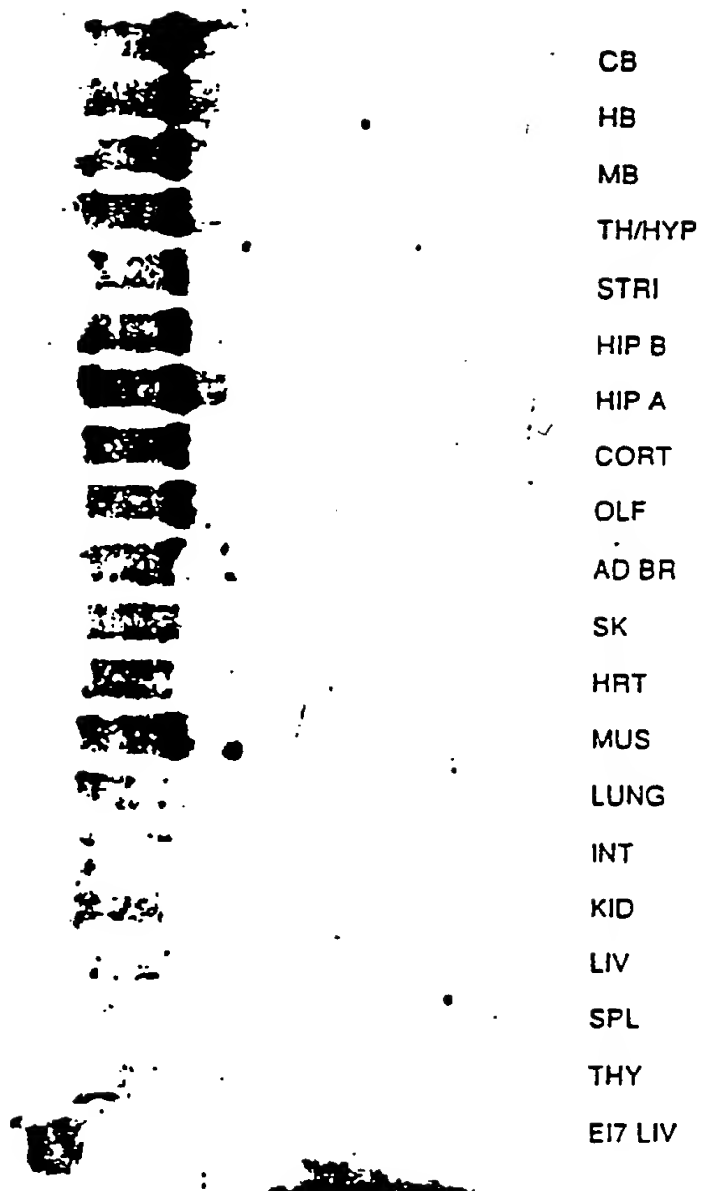


FIG. 6

## pCMX-hCNTFR

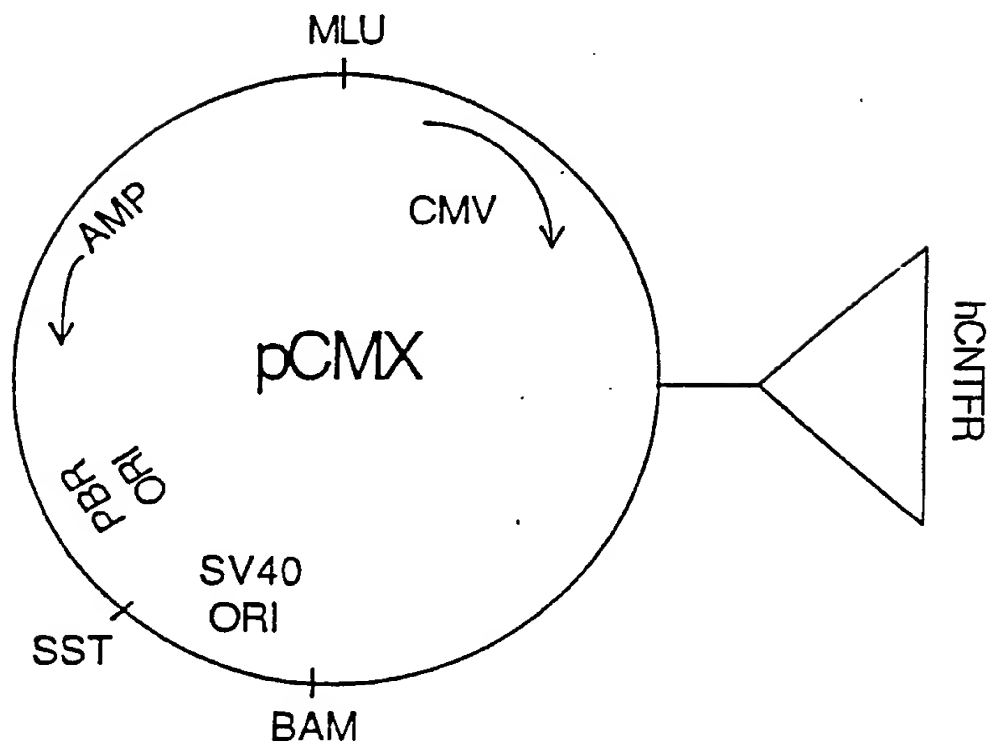


FIG. 7

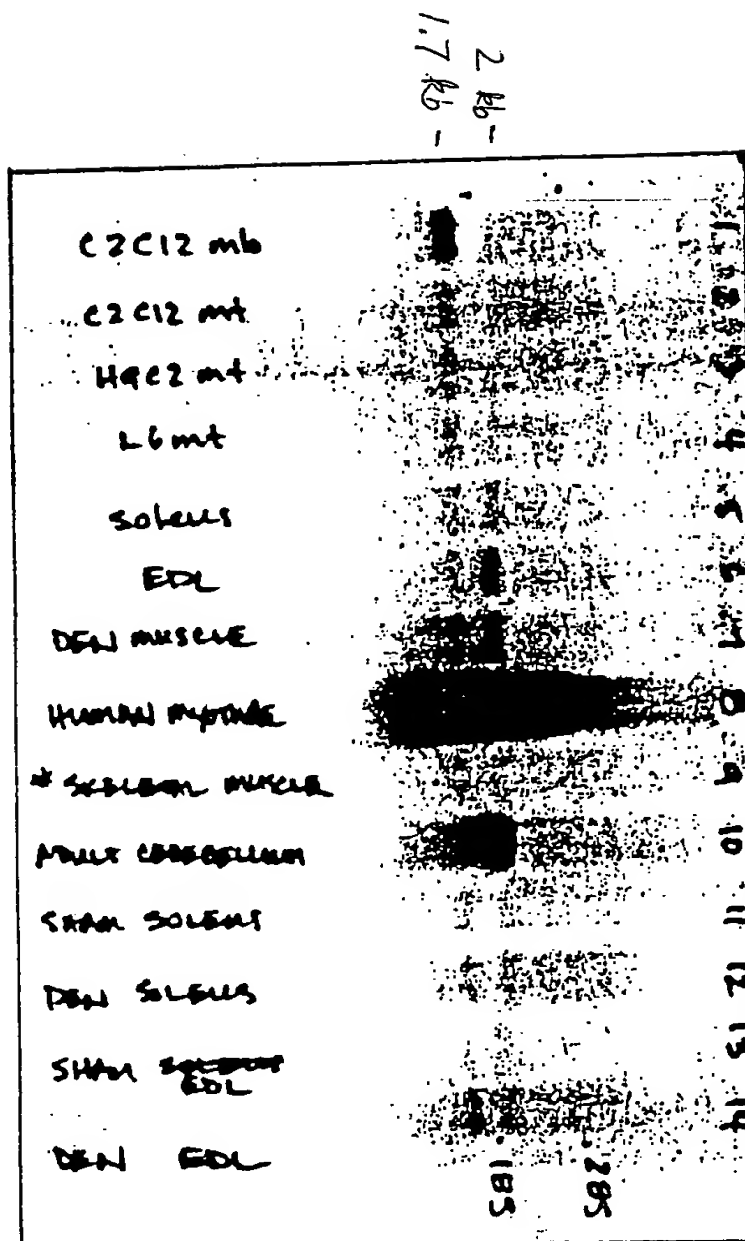


FIG. 8

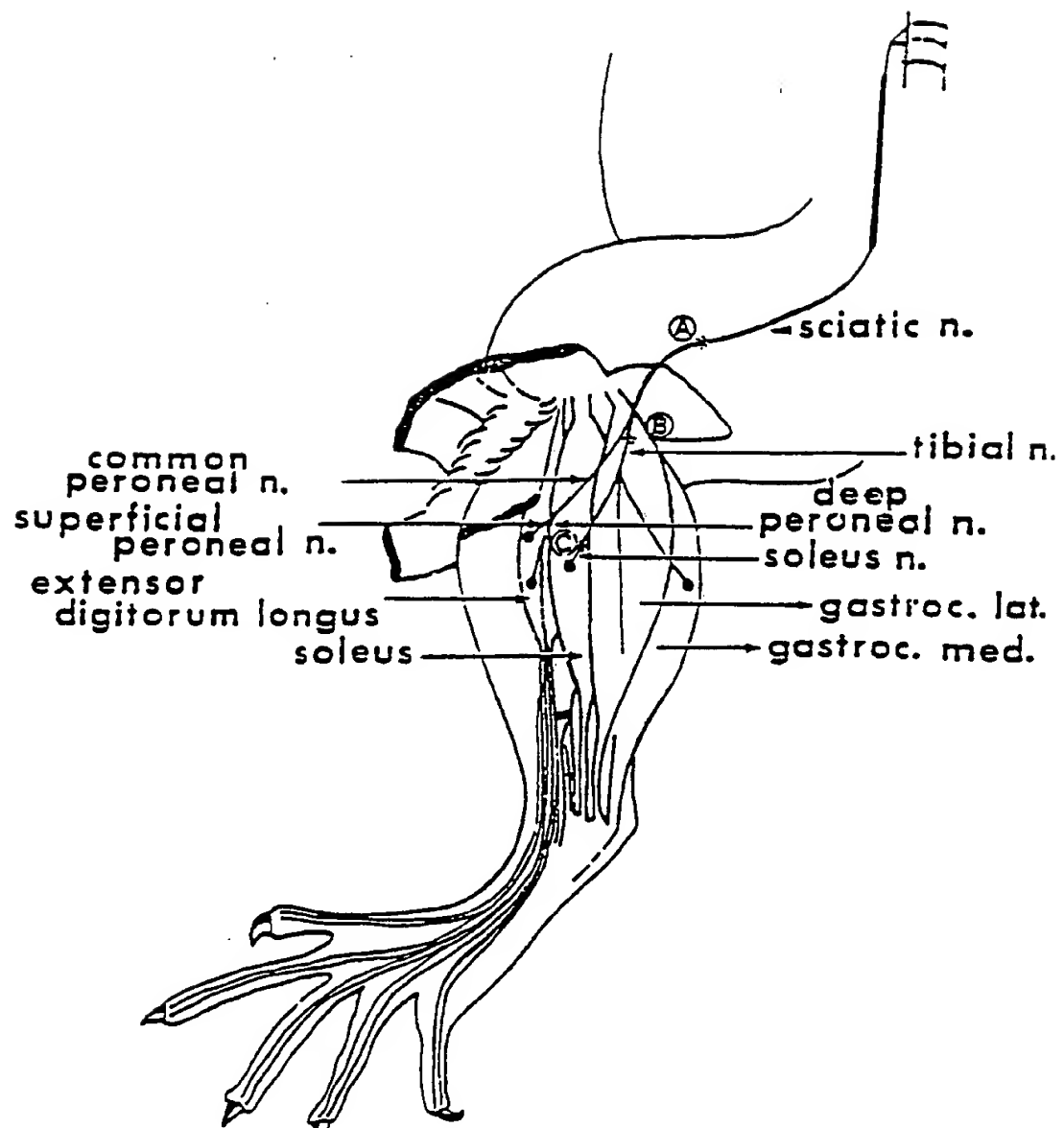
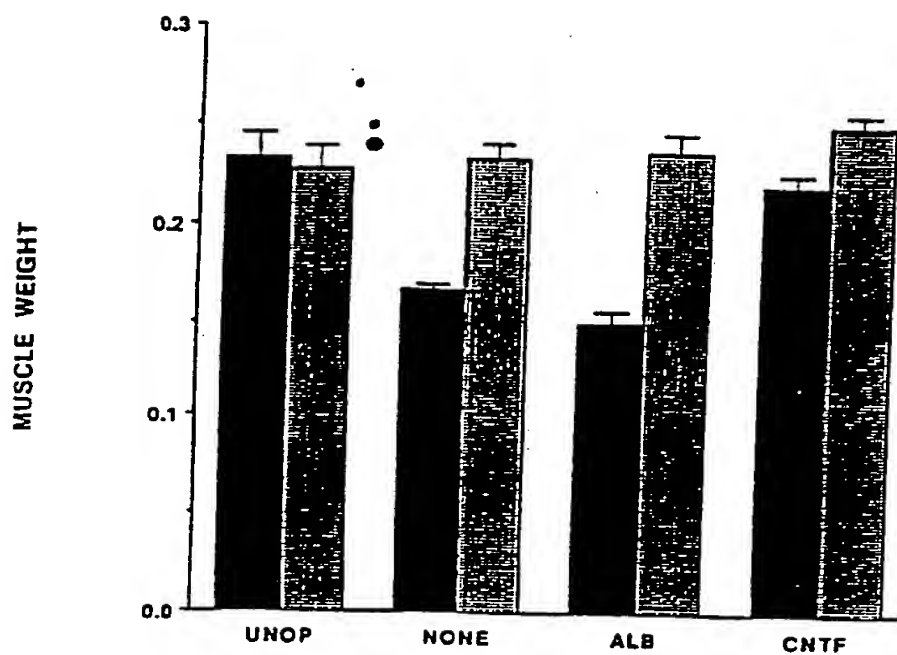


FIG. 9



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US91/03896

<b>I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b> (if several classification symbols apply, indicate all) <sup>6</sup> According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC IPC(5): C12Q 1/68; G01N 33/53 U.S. CL.: 435/6, 7.1						
<b>II. FIELDS SEARCHED</b> <div style="text-align: center; border-top: 1px solid black; border-bottom: 1px solid black;">Minimum Documentation Searched <sup>7</sup></div> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th style="width: 20%; border: 1px solid black;">Classification System</th> <th style="border: 1px solid black;">Classification Symbols</th> </tr> <tr> <td style="border: 1px solid black; text-align: center; vertical-align: middle;">U.S.</td> <td style="border: 1px solid black;">435/6, 7.1, 7.2, 7.21, 7.92, 69.1, 91, 172.3, 240.1, 320.1, 971; 436/501, 86, 811; 514/44, 2; 530/350, 359, 806, 812, 839; -935/9, 11, 12, 23, 71, 72, 78, 99, 102, 110; 536/27; 424/88</td> </tr> </table> <div style="text-align: center; border-top: 1px solid black; border-bottom: 1px solid black;">Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched <sup>8</sup></div>			Classification System	Classification Symbols	U.S.	435/6, 7.1, 7.2, 7.21, 7.92, 69.1, 91, 172.3, 240.1, 320.1, 971; 436/501, 86, 811; 514/44, 2; 530/350, 359, 806, 812, 839; -935/9, 11, 12, 23, 71, 72, 78, 99, 102, 110; 536/27; 424/88
Classification System	Classification Symbols					
U.S.	435/6, 7.1, 7.2, 7.21, 7.92, 69.1, 91, 172.3, 240.1, 320.1, 971; 436/501, 86, 811; 514/44, 2; 530/350, 359, 806, 812, 839; -935/9, 11, 12, 23, 71, 72, 78, 99, 102, 110; 536/27; 424/88					
<b>III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT <sup>9</sup></b>						
Category <sup>10</sup>	Citation of Document, <sup>11</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>12</sup>	Relevant to Claim No. <sup>13</sup>				
T	Science, Volume 253, issued 05 July 1991, <b>DAVIS ET AL.</b> , "The Receptor for Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor", pages 59-63, see entire document.	1-56				
X	The Journal of Neuroscience, Volume 9, Number 10, issued October 1989, <b>HALVORSEN ET AL.</b> , "Specific Down-Regulation of the $\alpha$ -Bungarotoxin Binding Component on Chick Autonomic Neurons by Ciliary Neurotrophic factor", pages 3673-3680, see especially the abstract.	8, 13, 45				
<u>X</u> A	Science, Volume 204, issued 29 June 1979, <b>ADLER ET AL.</b> , "Cholinergic Neurotrophic Factors: Intraocular Distribution of Trophic Activity for Ciliary Neurons" pages 1434-1436, see entire document.	<div style="text-align: right;">8, 13, 18</div> <div style="text-align: right;">1-7, 9-12,</div> <div style="text-align: right;">14-17, 19-56</div>				
<u>X</u> Y	Nature, Volume 342, issued 21 December 1989, <b>STOCKLI ET AL.</b> , "Molecular cloning, expression and regional distribution of rat ciliary neurotrophic factor", pages 920-923, see especially the abstract and first paragraph thereafter.	<div style="text-align: right;">8, 13, 18</div> <div style="text-align: right;">50-55</div>				
(cont.)						
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p><sup>10</sup> Special categories of cited documents:</p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.</p> <p>"&amp;" document member of the same patent family</p> </div> </div>						
<b>IV. CERTIFICATION</b>						
Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.2em;">30 September 1991</div>		Date of Mailing of this International Search Report <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.5em; font-weight: bold;">10 OCT 1991</div>				
International Searching Authority <div style="text-align: center; font-weight: bold;">ISA/US</div>		Signature of Authorized Officer <div style="text-align: center;">          Ardin Marschel       </div> <div style="text-align: right;">(vsh)</div>				

III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET)		
Category *	Citation of Document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No
$\frac{X}{Y}$	Science, Volume 246, issued 24 November 1989, LIN ET AL., "Purification, Cloning and Expression of Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor (CNTF)", pages 1023-1025, see especially the first paragraph after the abstract.	<u>8,13,18</u> 50-55
P,Y	US, A, 4,997,929 (COLLINS ET AL.) 05 March 1991, see especially column 2, lines 22-42.	8,13,15,18, 33,50-55
P,Y	US, A, 5,011,914 (COLLINS ET AL.) 30 April 1991, see especially column 2, lines 21-39.	8,13,15,18,
P,A	US, A, 5,017,375 (APPEL ET AL.) 21 May 1991, see the entire document.	1-56
A	US, A, 4,923,696 (APPEL ET AL.) 08 May 1990, see the entire document.	1-56





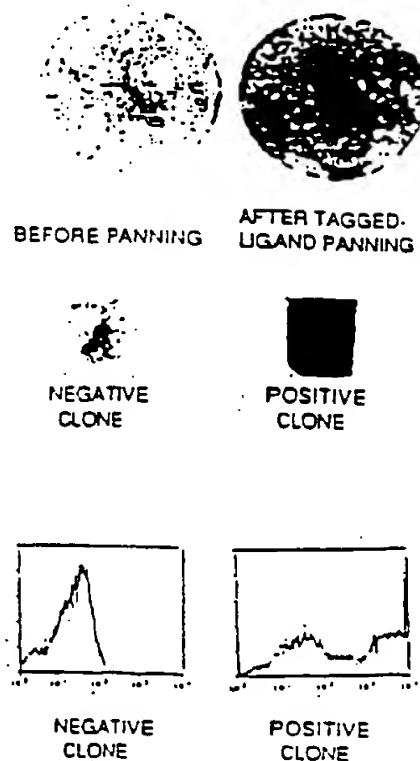
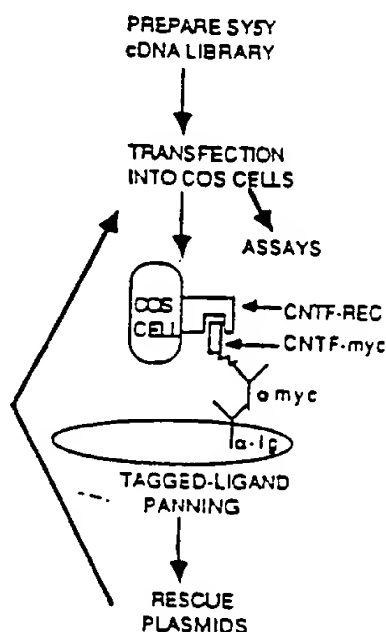
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>5</sup> : <b>C12Q 1/68, G01N 33/53</b>		<b>A1</b>	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 91/19009</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 12 December 1991 (12.12.91)
(21) International Application Number: <b>PCT/US91/03896</b>		(74) Agent: MISROCK, S., Leslie; Pennie & Edmonds, 1155 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10036 (US).	
(22) International Filing Date: 3 June 1991 (03.06.91)			
(30) Priority data: 532,285 1 June 1990 (01.06.90) US 676,647 28 March 1991 (28.03.91) US 700,677 15 May 1991 (15.05.91) US		(81) Designated States: AT (European patent), AU, BE (European patent), CA, CH (European patent), DE (European patent), DK (European patent), ES (European patent), FI, FR (European patent), GB (European patent), GR (European patent), HU, IT (European patent), JP, KR, LU (European patent), NL (European patent), NO, SE (European patent), SU.	
(71) Applicant: REGENERON PHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; 777 Old Saw Mill River Road, Tarrytown, NY 10591 (US).		<p><b>Published</b> With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</p>	
(72) Inventors: DAVIS, Samuel ; 332 West 88th Street, Apt. B2, New York, NY 10024 (US). SQUINTO, Stephen, P. ; 281 Birch Lane, Irvington, NY 10533 (US). FURTH, Mark, E. ; 54 Highbrood Avenue, Pelham, NY 10803 (US). YANCOPOULOS, George, D. ; 428 Sleepy Hollow Road, Briarcliff Manor, NY 10510 (US).			

(54) Title: THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

(57) Abstract

The present invention relates to the ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF) receptor, and provides for CNTF receptor nucleic acid and amino acid sequences. It also relates to (i) assay systems for detecting CNTF activity; (ii) experimental model systems for studying the physiologic role of CNTF; (iii) diagnostic techniques for identifying CNTF-related neurologic conditions; (iv) therapeutic techniques for the treatment of CNTF-related neurologic and muscular conditions, and (v) methods for identifying molecules homologous to CNTF and CNTFR.



**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

<b>AT</b>	Austria	<b>FR</b>	France	<b>MR</b>	Mauritania
<b>AU</b>	Australia	<b>GA</b>	Gabon	<b>MW</b>	Malawi
<b>BB</b>	Barbados	<b>GB</b>	United Kingdom	<b>NL</b>	Netherlands
<b>BE</b>	Belgium	<b>GN</b>	Guinea	<b>NO</b>	Norway
<b>BF</b>	Burkina Faso	<b>GR</b>	Greece	<b>NZ</b>	New Zealand
<b>BG</b>	Bulgaria	<b>HU</b>	Hungary	<b>PL</b>	Poland
<b>BJ</b>	Benin	<b>IE</b>	Ireland	<b>PT</b>	Portugal
<b>BR</b>	Brazil	<b>IT</b>	Italy	<b>RO</b>	Romania
<b>CA</b>	Canada	<b>JP</b>	Japan	<b>RU</b>	Russian Federation
<b>CF</b>	Central African Republic	<b>KP</b>	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	<b>SD</b>	Sudan
<b>CC</b>	Congo	<b>KR</b>	Republic of Korea	<b>SE</b>	Sweden
<b>CH</b>	Switzerland	<b>KZ</b>	Kazakhstan	<b>SK</b>	Slovak Republic
<b>CI</b>	Côte d'Ivoire	<b>LI</b>	Liechtenstein	<b>SN</b>	Senegal
<b>CM</b>	Cameroon	<b>LK</b>	Sri Lanka	<b>SU</b>	Soviet Union
<b>CS</b>	Czechoslovakia	<b>LU</b>	Luxembourg	<b>TD</b>	Chad
<b>CZ</b>	Czech Republic	<b>MC</b>	Monaco	<b>TG</b>	Togo
<b>DE</b>	Germany	<b>MG</b>	Madagascar	<b>UA</b>	Ukraine
<b>DK</b>	Denmark	<b>ML</b>	Mali	<b>US</b>	United States of America
<b>ES</b>	Spain	<b>MN</b>	Mongolia	<b>VN</b>	Viet Nam
<b>FI</b>	Finland				

-1-

THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR1. INTRODUCTION

The present invention relates to the ciliary  
5 neurotrophic factor receptor (CNTFR), and provides for CNTF  
receptor encoding nucleic acid and amino acid sequences.  
It also relates to (i) assay systems for detecting CNTF  
activity; (ii) experimental model systems for studying the  
physiological role of CNTF; (ii) diagnostic techniques for  
10 identifying CNTF-related neurologic conditions; (iv)  
therapeutic techniques for the treatment of CNTF-related  
neurologic conditions, and (v) methods for identifying  
molecules homologous to CNTFR.

2. BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION2.1. CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR

Ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF) is a protein that  
is specifically required for the survival of embryonic  
chick ciliary ganglion neurons in vitro (Manthorpe et al.,  
20 1980, J. Neurochem. 34:69-75). The ciliary ganglion is  
anatomically located within the orbital cavity, lying  
between the lateral rectus and the sheath of the optic  
nerve; it receives parasympathetic nerve fibers from the  
oculomotor nerve which innervate the ciliary muscle and  
25 sphincter pupillae.

Ciliary ganglion neurons have been found to be among  
the neuronal populations which exhibit defined periods of  
cell death. In the chick ciliary ganglion, half of the  
neurons present at embryonic day 8 (E8) have been observed  
30 to die before E14 (Landmesser and Pilar, 1974, J. Physiol.  
241:737-749). During this same time period, ciliary  
ganglion neurons are forming connections with their target  
tissues, namely, the ciliary body and the choroid coat of  
the eye. Landmesser and Pilar (1974, J. Physiol. 241:751-  
35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-2-

736) observed that removal of an eye prior to the period of cell death results in the complete loss of ciliary ganglion neurons in the ipsilateral ganglion. Conversely, Narayanan and Narayanan (1978, J. Embryol. Ex. Morphol. 44:53-70) observed that, by implanting an additional eye primordium and thereby increasing the amount of available target tissue, ciliary ganglion neuronal cell death may be decreased. These results are consistent with the existence of a target derived neurotrophic factor which acts upon ciliary ganglion neurons.

In culture, ciliary ganglion (CG) neurons have been found to require a factor or factors for survival. Ciliary neurotrophic factor(s) (CNTF) activity has been identified in chick muscle cell conditioned media (Helfand et al., 1976, Dev. Biol. 50:541-547; Helfand et al., 1978, Exp. Cell Res. 113:39-45; Bennett and Nurcome, 1979, Brain Res. 173:543-548; Nishi and Berg, 1979, Nature 277:232-234; Varon et al., 1979, Brain Res. 173:29-45), in muscle extracts (McLennan and Hendry, 1978, Neurosci. Lett. 10:269-273); in chick embryo extract (Varon et al., 1979, Brain Res. 173:29-45; Tuttle et al., 1980, Brain Res. 183:161-180), and in medium conditioned by heart cells (for discussion, see also Adler et al., 1979, Science 204:1434-1436 and Barbin et al., 1984, J. Neurochem. 43:1468-1478).

Adler et al. (1979, Science 204:1434-1436) used an assay system based on microwell cultures of CG neurons to demonstrate that a very rich source of CNTF was found in the intraocular target tissues the CG neurons innervate. Out of 8000 trophic units (TU) present in a twelve-day embryo, 2500 TU were found present in eye tissue; activity appeared to be localized in a fraction containing the ciliary body and choroid coat.

Subsequently, Barbin et al. (1984, J. Neurochem. 43:1468-1478) reported a procedure for enriching CNTF from chick embryo eye tissue. CNTF activity was also found to

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-3-

be associated with non-CG tissues, including rat sciatic nerve (Williams et al., 1984, Int. J. Develop. Neurosci 218:460-470). Manthorpe et al. (1986, Brain Res. 367:282-286) reported partial purification of mammalian CNTF activity from extracts of adult rat sciatic nerve using a fractionation procedure similar to that employed for isolating CNTF activity from chick eye. In addition, Watters and Hendry (1987, J. Neurochem. 49:705-713) described a method for enriching CNTF activity approximately 20,000-fold from bovine cardiac tissue under non-denaturing conditions using heparin-affinity chromatography. CNTF activity has also been identified in damaged brain tissue (Manthorpe et al., 1983, Brain Res. 267:47-56; Nieto-Sampedro et al., 1983, J. Neurosci. 3:2219-2229).

Carnow et al. (1985, J. Neurosci. 5: 1965-1971) and Rudge et al., (1987, Develop. Brain Res. 32:103-110) describe methods for identifying CNTF-like activity from Western blots of tissue extracts and then identifying protein bands containing CNTF activity by inoculating the nitrocellulose strips in a culture dish with CG neurons and identifying areas of cell survival using vital dyes. Using this method, Carnow et al. (1985, J. Neurosci. 5:1965-1971) observed that adult rat sciatic nerve and brain-derived CNTF activities appear to exhibit a different size (24kD) than chick CNTF (20.4 kD).

Recently, CNTF has been cloned and synthesized in bacterial expression systems, as described in U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor," filed August 20, 1990 by Sendtner et al. incorporated by reference in its entirety herein. Using recombinant probes, CNTF-mRNA in tissues of adult rat appeared to be about 1.2 kb in size. Rat brain CNTF was cloned and found to be encoded by a mRNA having a short 5' untranslated region of 77 bp and an open reading frame of

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-4-

600 bp, predicting a protein of about 200 amino acids (Stockli et al., 1989, Nature 342:920-923). Human CNTF was also cloned and sequenced (U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor," filed August 20, 1990 by Sendtner et al.); its coding sequences were substantially conserved relative to rat sequences, whereas noncoding sequences were less conserved.

## 2.2. FUNCTIONAL PROPERTIES OF CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR

A number of biological effects have been ascribed to CNTF. As discussed above, CNTF was originally described as an activity which supported the survival of neurons of the E8 chick ciliary ganglion, a component of the parasympathetic nervous system. A description of other biological properties of preparations known to contain CNTF activity follows:

Saadat et al. (1989, J. Cell Biol. 108:1807-1816) observed that their most highly purified preparation of rat sciatic nerve CNTF induced cholinergic differentiation of rat sympathetic neurons in culture. Also, Hoffman (1988, J. Neurochem. 51:109-113) found that CNTF activity derived from chick eye increased the level of choline-O-acetyltransferase activity in retinal monolayer cultures.

Hughes et al. (1988, Nature 335:70-73) studied a population of bipotential glial progenitor cells in cultures derived from the perinatal rat optic nerve and brain; these progenitor cells have been shown to give rise to, first, oligodendrocytes and then, to type 2 astrocytes. Under the culture conditions used, oligodendrocyte differentiation appeared to occur directly from an oligodendrocyte-type 2-astrocyte (O-2A) progenitor cell, whereas type 2 astrocyte differentiation appears to require the presence of an inducing protein similar or identical to CNTF (see also Anderson, 1989, Trends Neurosci. 12:83-85).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

Heymanns and Unsicker (1979, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 4:7758-7762) observed that high-speed supernatants of neuroblastoma cell extracts produced effects similar to those associated with CNTF activity from chick eye or rat sciatic nerve; the presence of a protein similar but not identical to CNTF (by molecular weight) was indicated.

Ebendal (1987, J. Neurosci. Res. 17:19-24) looked for CNTF-like activity in a variety of rat and chicken tissues. He observed CNTF-like activity among a fairly wide range of rat, but not in chicken tissues; rat liver, spleen T cells, and submandibular gland cells were found to be associated with low levels of CG survival promoting activity, whereas heart, brain, and skeletal muscle tissues were associated with higher survival promoting activity. Among tissues tested the highest CNTF-like activity was observed to be associated with rat kidney.

While the above studies have shown that many tissue and cell extracts contain activities which support the survival of neuronal populations which are also responsive to CNTF, (i.e. they support the survival of E8 chick ciliary ganglion neurons in a tissue culture bioassay), it cannot be assumed that a single or identical protein is responsible for these activities. As shown for the family of fibroblast growth factors (FGFs) (Dionne et al. , 1990, EMBO J. 9:2685-2692), for example, a number of distinct polypeptides or proteins possess identical biological activity in a single bioassay.

The neuronal specificity of chick eye and rat sciatic nerve CNTF were initially found to have some overlap with neuronal populations responsive to NGF. Although CNTF was observed to have some overlapping neuronal specificity with NGF, distinguishing characteristics between them became most apparent in studies of the roles of CNTF and NGF in populations of developing neurons (Skaper and Varon, 1986, Brain Res. 389:39-46). In addition to their differing

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-6-

roles in development, CNTF may also be distinguished from NGF by molecular weight, isoelectric point, inability to be inactivated by antibodies to NGF, and by CNTF's ability to support the in vitro survival of CGF neurons (Barbin et al., 1984, J. Neurochem. 43:1468-1478). Lin et al. (1989),  
5 Science 246:1023-1026 have reported that CNTF is without - sequence homology to any previously reported proteins. Sendtner et al. (U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor," filed August 20, 1990) observed that recombinant CNTF promoted  
10 survival of mediodorsal and ventral spinal cord neurons, and also that purified rat sciatic nerve CNTF appeared to prevent cell death of motoneurons in lesioned facial nerve (VIIIth cranial nerve) of newborn rat (Sendtner et al., 1990, Nature 345:440-441).

15 The cloning and expression of CNTF using recombinant DNA technology has led to the discovery of a number of CNTF activities.

### 2.3. GROWTH FACTOR RECEPTORS

20 A number of receptors which mediate binding and response to protein factors have been characterized and molecularly cloned over the last few years, including receptors for insulin, for platelet derived growth factor, for epidermal growth factor and its relatives, for the  
25 fibroblast growth factors, and for various interleukins and hematopoietic growth factors. Recent data reveal that certain receptors can bind to multiple (related) growth factors, while in other cases the same factor can act on multiple (related) receptors (e.g. Lupu et al., 1990, Science 249:1552-1555; Dionne et al., 1990, EMBO J.  
30 9:2685-2692; Miki et al., 1991, Science 251:72-75). Most receptors that bind protein factors can broadly be characterized as having extracellular portions responsible for specifically binding the factor, transmembrane regions  
35 which span the membrane, and intracellular domains that are

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



-7-

often involved in initiating signal transduction upon binding of the protein factor to the receptor's extracellular portion. Interestingly, although many receptors are comprised of a single polypeptide chain, other receptors apparently require (at least) two separate subunits in order to bind to their factor with high-affinity and to allow functional response following binding (e.g. Hempstead et al., 1989, Science 243:373-375; Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). The extracellular and intracellular portions of a given receptor often share common structural motifs with the corresponding regions of other receptors, suggesting evolutionary and functional relationships between different receptors. These relationships can often be quite distant and may simply reflect the repeated use of certain general domain structures. For example, a variety of different receptors that bind unrelated factors make use of "immunoglobulin" domains in their extracellular portions, while other receptors utilize "cytokine receptor" domains in their factor-binding regions (e.g. Akira et al., 1990, The FASEB J. 4:2860-2867). A large number of receptors with distinct extracellular binding domains (which thus bind different factors) contain related intracytoplasmic domains encoding tyrosine-specific protein kinases that are activated in response to factor binding (e.g. Ullrich and Schlessinger, 1990, Cell 61:203-212). The mechanisms by which factor-binding "activates" the signal transduction process is poorly understood, even in the case of receptor tyrosine kinases. For other receptors, in which the intracellular domain encodes a domain of unknown function or in which the binding component associates with a second protein of unknown function (e.g. Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157), activation of signal transduction remains even more mysterious.

35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

### 3. SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to CNTF receptor (CNTFR) genes and proteins. It is based, in part, on the cloning and characterization of the human CNTFR gene and its expression in transfected COS cells.

5       The present invention provides for nucleic acid sequences which encode the CNTFR, as well as fragments derived therefrom. It also provides for substantially purified CNTFR protein, and for peptide fragments thereof.

10       In a further aspect of the invention, CNTFR probes, including nucleic acid as well as antibody probes, may be used to identify CNTFR-related molecules. For example, the present invention provides for such molecules which form a complex with CNTFR and thereby participate in CNTFR function. As another example, the present invention  
15       provides for receptor molecules which are homologous or cross-reactive antigenically, but not identical to CNTFR. These particular embodiments are based on the discovery that the CNTFR bears homology to other biologically relevant molecules, including, most particularly, the IL-6  
20       receptor, but also the PDGF receptor, the CSF-1 receptor, the prolactin receptor, the IL-2 and IL-4 receptors, the GM-CSF granulocyte macrophage colony stimulation factor receptor, pregnancy-specific alpha 1-beta glycoprotein, and  
25       carcinoembryonic antigen, a tumor marker.

30       The present invention also provides for assay systems for detecting CNTF activity, comprising cells which express high levels of CNTFR, and which are therefore extremely sensitive to even very low concentrations of CNTF or CNTF-like molecules.

35       In addition, the present invention provides for experimental model systems for studying the physiological role of CNTF. Such systems include animal models, such as (i) animals exposed to circulating CNTFR peptides which compete with cellular receptor for CNTF binding and thereby

-9-

produce a CNTF-depleted condition, (ii) animals immunized with CNTFR; (iii) transgenic animals which express high levels of CNTFR and therefore are hypersensitive to CNTF; and (iv) animals derived using embryonic stem cell technology in which the endogenous CNTFR genes were deleted from the genome.

In yet further embodiments of the invention, CNTFR probes may be used to identify cells and tissues which are responsive to CNTF in normal or diseased states. For example, a patient suffering from a CNTF-related disorder may exhibit an aberrancy of CNTFR expression.

In addition, the CNTFR genes and proteins of the invention may be used therapeutically. For example, and not by way of limitation, a circulating CNTFR may be used to deplete CNTF levels in areas of trauma to the central nervous system. Alternatively, a recombinant CNTFR gene may be inserted in tissues which would benefit from increased sensitivity to CNTF, such as motoneurons in patients suffering from amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.

#### 4. DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

Figure 1. A. Schematic diagram of expression cloning using tagged ligand binding strategy. B. Secondary iodinated antibody assay showed that in contrast to COS cells transfected with the original cDNA library, many COS cells transfected with DNA obtained after one round of panning expressed CNTF-binding sites (radioautograph done on 60 mm plate of transfected COS cells; each black dot represents a single transfected COS cell expressing a CNTF-binding site). C. The same assay as described in (B), but where COS cells had been transfected with a non-CNTFR encoding plasmid (negative clone) or a CNTFR encoding plasmid (positive clone). Only small sections of each plate are shown. D. Results of fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS)

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-10-

analysis of COS cells transfected with the negative clone or the positive clone of (C).

Figure 2. Nucleic acid sequence (SEQ ID NO:1) of CNTFR-encoding cDNA and deduced amino acid sequence (SEQ ID NO:2).

5 Figure 3. Alignment of the human CNTFR showing homologies in the immunoglobulin-like domain and the cytokine receptor-like domain. Numbers on the left indicate the amino acid number starting from the first methionine. Identical residues and conserved substitutions are  
10 marked by solid boxes. Gaps are introduced to maximize homology. IL-6 = interleukin 6 (IgG-like domain = SEQ ID NO:3, cytokine-like domain = SEQ ID NO:8); CEA = carcinoembryonic antigen (IgG-like domain = SEQ ID NO:4), PDGF = platelet derived growth factor (IgG-like  
15 domain = SEQ ID NO:5), CSF-1 = colony stimulating factor 1 (IgG-like domain = SEQ ID NO:6); alpha 1- $\beta$  GP = alpha 1  $\beta$  glycoprotein (IgG-like domain = SEQ ID NO:7), PRL = prolactin (cytokine domain = SEQ ID NO:9), EPO = erythropoietin (cytokine domain = SEQ ID NO:10); IL-2 =  
20 interleukin 2 (cytokine domain = SEQ ID NO:11); IL-4 = interleukin 4 (cytokine domain = SEQ ID NO:12), GM-CSF = granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor (cytokine domain = SEQ ID NO:13).

25 Figure 4. Structural relationships between the CNTFR and other related receptors. The human IL-6 receptor and CNTFR have an immunoglobulin domain fused to the N-terminus of the proposed factor binding domain. A short acidic tether (zig zag line) connects the  
30 globular immunoglobulin and proposed factor binding domain. A proposed protein similar to gp130 is shown in association with the CNTFR, as discussed in the text. HuGRHR - human growth hormone receptor; RbPRLR - rabbit prolactin receptor; MoEPOR - mouse  
35 erythropoietin receptor; HuIL2R $\beta$  - human interleukin-2

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-11-

receptor  $\beta$ -chain; HuIL6R - human interleukin 6 receptor; HuCNTFR - human ciliary derived neurotrophic factor receptor; C - cysteine; X- unknown amino acid; W - tryptophan; S - serine; F - phenylalanine.

5 Figure 5. Tissue localization of CNTFR message. RNA was prepared from the indicated tissues of rat as described in section 8.1. DNA fragments of CNTFR were derived from expression constructs containing these genes in pCMX as described in section 8.1. Tissues: cerebellum (CB); hindbrain (HB); midbrain (MB); thalamus (TH/HYP);  
10 striatum (STRI); hippocampus B (HIP B); hippocampus A (HIP A); cortex (CORT); olfactory bulb (OLF); adult brain (AD BR); skin (SK); heart (HRT); muscle (MUS), lung (LUNG); intestine (INT); kidney (KID); liver (LIV); spleen (SPL); thymus (THY); E17 liver (E17 LIV).

15 Figure 6. pCMX with hCNTF-R gene insert. Construction of pCMX in copending application.

Figure 7. Northern blot analysis of CNTF receptor expression in skeletal muscle. 10  $\mu$ g of total RNA was run in each lane. Lane 1, mouse myoblast cell line C2C12 mb; lane 2, mouse myotube cell line C2C12 mt;  
20 lane 3, rat myotube cell line H9C2 mt; lane 4, rat myotube cell line L6 mt; lane 5, rat soleus muscle; lane 6, rat extensor digitorum longus (EDL) muscle; lane 7, denervated skeletal muscle; lane 8, purified human myotubes; lane 9, skeletal muscle (this RNA  
25 sample was degraded); lane 10, adult rat cerebellum; lane 11, sham-operated soleus muscle; lane 12, 72 hour denervated rat soleus muscle; lane 13, sham-operated EDL muscle; lane 14, 72 hour denervated EDL muscle.

30 Figure 8. Anatomical diagram of the right hindlimb subjected to denervation surgery.

Figure 9. UNOP = unoperated soleus muscles from animal group 1 (Table IV); solid bar represents right side and  
35 stippled bar represents left side; NONE = lesioned

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-12-

(denervated, right side) and control (sham-operated, left side) soleus muscles without any injection, from animal group 2; ALB = lesioned (right) and control (left) soleus muscles treated with PBS/BSA (SC) from animal group 6; CNTF=lesioned (right) and control (left) soleus muscles treated with CNTF/BSA (SC) from animal group 5. Solid bars: lesioned; stippled bars: control.

#### 5. DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

For purposes of clarity of disclosure, and not by way of limitation, the detailed description of the invention will be divided into the following subsections:

- (i) cloning of the CNTF receptor;
- (ii) nucleic acid encoding the CNTF receptor;
- (iii) CNTFR peptides;
- (iv) expression of CNTF receptor;
- (v) identification of molecules related to the CNTF receptor; and
- (vi) utility of the invention.

##### 5.1. CLONING OF THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

The present invention enables the cloning of the CNTF receptor (CNTFR) by providing a method for selecting target cells which express CNTFR. By providing a means of enriching for CNTFR encoding sequences, the present invention enables the purification of CNTFR protein and the direct cloning of CNTFR-encoding DNA.

For example, CNTFR-bearing target cells may be selected, and CNTFR protein may be purified using methods known to one skilled in the art for the purification of a receptor molecule. For example, and not by way of limitation, CNTF or CNTF attached to a detectable molecule, as described in section 5.6.3, infra, in which the tag may

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-13-

be, for example, a radiolabel, antigenic determinant, or antibody, to name a few, (CNTF/tag) may be reversibly crosslinked to target cells, and membrane associated proteins from said target cells may be subjected to purification methods. Such purification methods may  
5 include SDS-PAGE, followed by detection of the position of CNTF or CNTF/tag in the gel; for example, radiolabeled CNTF could be used, and, crosslinked to its receptor, may be visualized in the gel by autoradiography. Alternatively,  
10 anti-CNTF or anti-tag antibody could be used in the Western blot technique to identify the position of the CNTF/receptor complex in such gels. Preparative gel electrophoresis could be used to isolate sufficient amounts of protein to enable amino acid sequencing of peptide  
15 fragments of the receptor, or to enable production of anti-CNTFR antibody which could be used to purify CNTFR molecules from target cell extracts. Amino acid sequence obtained from purified CNTFR may be used to design degenerate oligonucleotide probes which may be used to  
20 identify CNTFR encoding cloned nucleic acid in a genomic DNA library or, preferably, in a cDNA library constructed from CNTFR producing target cells.

Alternatively, the CNTFR may be cloned by subtractive hybridization methods, in which mRNA may be prepared from  
25 target cells which express CNTFR, and then non-CNTFR encoding sequences may be subtracted by hybridizing the mRNA (or cDNA produced therefrom) with mRNA or cDNA derived from cells such as neuronal cells which do not express the CNTFR. The nucleic acid remaining after subtraction is  
30 likely to be enriched in CNTFR-encoding sequences.

Nucleic acid prepared, preferably, from target cells enriched in CNTFR encoding sequences due to endogenous expression of CNTFR and/or due to subtraction techniques discussed supra, may also be used in expression cloning  
35 techniques to directly clone the CNTFR. For example, and

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-14-

not by way of limitation, total genomic DNA from target cells which express CNTFR may be prepared and then transfected into a cell line which does not express CNTFR and which is preferably derived from a different species from the target cell species (for example, DNA from a human CNTFR-encoding cell may be transfected into a mouse cell, such as an L cell). Although a relatively small number of transfected cells may express CNTFR, such cells may be identified by rosetting techniques or immunofluorescence techniques as described in section 5.6.3, infra and may be isolated, for example, by fluorescence-activated cell sorting or using antibody-coupled magnetic beads or "panning" techniques, known to one skilled in the art. The CNTFR encoding DNA may be cloned from receptor-producing transfectants by producing a genomic library from the transfectants and then isolating and propagating clones that contain either sequences conforming to CNTFR amino acid sequence or sequences homologous to species specific genetic elements; for example, human DNA may be identified via Alu repeated sequences, which are distributed at high frequency throughout the human genome. For example, and not by way of limitation, cultured non-human cells comprising transfected human DNA encoding the CNTFR and which express human CNTFR may be selected, propagated, and then genomic DNA prepared from these cells may be used to transfect cultured non-human cells, and CNTFR expressing cells may be selected. This process may be repeated; its purpose is to decrease, by each transfection step, the amount of human DNA present in CNTFR encoding cells. Accordingly, when the genomic DNA of transfected, human CNTFR expressing cells is cloned to generate a library, clones which include human DNA (and are identified, for example, by screening for distinctly human sequence elements) are more likely to comprise CNTFR-encoding sequences when repeated transfections have been performed.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



-15-

RNA from a CNTFR expressing cell line or tissue source, or a cDNA expression library obtained from such a source may be introduced in pools into *Xenopus* oocytes by direct injection; oocytes injected with pools encoding the CNTFR may be identified by assaying for functional  
5 responses (e.g. ion fluxes) that may be induced by exposing such oocytes to CNTF, or alternatively by detecting the presence of CNTF-binding sites on the surface of such injected oocytes. Repetitively dividing positive pools  
10 into smaller and smaller pools may lead to the identification of individual clones encoding the CNTFR.

Alternatively, a cDNA expression library may be derived from CNTFR bearing target cells and then utilized in transient expression assays. In a preferred embodiment  
15 of the invention, said expression library may incorporate the SV40 origin of replication and transient expression assays may be performed using COS cells. CNTFR-expressing transfectants may be identified as set forth above, and CNTFR encoding DNA may be retrieved using standard methods.  
20 The nucleic acid sequence encoding the CNTFR may then be propagated and/or utilized in expression systems using methods substantially as set forth for nucleic acid encoding CNTF, as described in U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic  
25 Factor," filed August 20, 1990 by Sendtner et al.

In a specific embodiment of the invention, exemplified in Section 6, infra, (and see Figure 1) expression cloning of the CNTFR may be performed as follows. A cDNA library may be prepared from a cell line or tissue which expresses  
30 CNTFR such as SH-SY5Y, such that the cDNA is inserted into an expression vector. This library may then be transfected into a suitable cell line, such as COS M5 cells, using, for example, a DEAE/chloroquine transfection protocol. Several days after transfection, the cells may be detached from  
35 their culture dishes and subjected to the Aruffo/Seed

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-16-

panning procedure (Seed and Aruffo, 1987, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 84:365-3369), with the following modifications:

- 5 (i) instead of incubating the transfected cells with anti-receptor antibodies, the cells may be incubated first with tagged CNTF (for example, CNTF myc) on ice for about 30 minutes, centrifuged through phosphate buffered saline (PBS)/2% Ficoll to remove excess ligand, and then incubated with anti-tag antibody (for example, the anti-myc antibody 9E10) for about 30 minutes  
10 on ice.
- 15 (ii) the cells may then be spun through PBS/2% Ficoll and then "panned" on plates coated with antibody that recognizes the anti-tag antibody (for example, if the anti-tag antibody is 9E10, anti-mouse antibody.

Then, after washing nonadherent cells from the plates, Hirt supernatants may be prepared from the adherent cells, and plasmid DNA may be precipitated in the presence of about 10-20 $\mu$ g of tRNA. The resulting plasmid DNA may then  
20 be introduced into suitable bacteria (for example DH10 B bacteria) by standard techniques, including, but not limited to, electroporation. The cultures grown from transformed bacteria may then be used to prepare plasmid  
25 DNA for another round of eukaryotic transfection and panning. After this second transfection, panning and plasmid DNA preparation and transformation, the bacterial transformants may be plated out on selective media, individual colonies may be picked and used for the  
30 preparation of plasmid DNA, and DNA prepared from a number of such clones may be used individually for COS cell transfection. Alternatively, more rounds of enrichment may be necessary before individual colonies are tested. Resulting COS cells expressing CNTF binding sites may be  
35 identified by a number of techniques, including, but not

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-17-

limited to, indirect binding assays using radioactively labeled or fluorescently labeled indicator antibodies. An example of a CNTFR-encoding nucleic acid is comprised in pCMX-hCNTFR (I2), Figure 6, which has been deposited with the NRRL and assigned accession number B-18789, and which is described in copending United States patent application Serial No. entitled "Mammalian Expression Vector" by Davis and Yancopoulos. Clones identified in this manner may then be analyzed by restriction fragment mapping and nucleic acid sequencing using standard techniques. Fragments of the CNTFR-encoding cDNA may then be used to identify genomic DNA sequences which comprise the CNTFR gene, for example, from a genomic DNA library using standard hybridization techniques.

Once obtained, a CNTFR gene may be cloned or subcloned using any method known in the art. A large number of vector-host systems known in the art may be used. Possible vectors include, but are not limited to, cosmids, plasmids or modified viruses, but the vector system must be compatible with the host cell used. Such vectors include, but are not limited to, bacteriophages such as lambda derivatives, or plasmids such as pBR322, pUC, or Bluescript® (Stratagene) plasmid derivatives. Recombinant molecules can be introduced into host cells via transformation, transfection, infection, electroporation, etc.

The CNTFR gene may be inserted into a cloning vector which can be used to transform, transfect, or infect appropriate host cells so that many copies of the gene sequences are generated. This can be accomplished by ligating the DNA fragment into a cloning vector which has complementary cohesive termini. However, if the complementary restriction sites used to fragment the DNA are not present in the cloning vector, the ends of the DNA molecules may be enzymatically modified. It may prove

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-18-

advantageous to incorporate restriction endonuclease cleavage sites into the oligonucleotide primers used in polymerase chain reaction to facilitate insertion into vectors. Alternatively, any site desired may be produced by ligating nucleotide sequences (linkers) onto the DNA termini; these ligated linkers may comprise specific chemically synthesized oligonucleotides encoding restriction endonuclease recognition sequences. In an alternative method, the cleaved vector and CNTFR gene may be modified by homopolymeric tailing.

In specific embodiments, transformation of host cells with recombinant DNA molecules that incorporate an isolated CNTFR gene, cDNA, or synthesized DNA sequence enables generation of multiple copies of the gene. Thus, the gene may be obtained in large quantities by growing transformants, isolating the recombinant DNA molecules from the transformants and, when necessary, retrieving the inserted gene from the isolated recombinant DNA.

## 5.2. NUCLEIC ACID ENCODING CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

Using the methods detailed supra and in Example Section 6, infra, the following nucleic acid sequence was determined, and the corresponding amino acid sequence deduced. The sequence of the human CNTFR is depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1). This sequence, its functional equivalent, or fragments of this sequence at least 6 nucleotides in length may be used in accordance with the invention. Additionally, the invention relates to CNTFR genes isolated from porcine, ovine, bovine, feline, avian, equine, or canine, as well as primate sources and any other species in which CNTF activity exists. Subsequences comprising hybridizable portions of the CNTFR sequence have use, e.g., in nucleic acid hybridization assays, Southern and Northern blot analyses, etc.

-19-

For example, the nucleic acid sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1) can be altered by mutations such as substitutions, additions or deletions that provide for sequences encoding functionally equivalent molecules. According to the present invention, a molecule is

5 functionally equivalent or active compared with a molecule having the sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) if it has the ability to bind CNTF, but it does not necessarily bind CNTF with an affinity comparable to that of natural CNTFR. Due to the degeneracy of nucleotide

10 coding sequences, other DNA sequences which encode substantially the same amino acid sequence as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) may be used in the practice of the present invention. These include but are not limited to

15 nucleotide sequences comprising all or portions of the CNTFR gene depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1) which is altered by the substitution of different codons that encode a functionally equivalent amino acid residue within the sequence, thus producing a silent change.

20 In addition, the recombinant CNTFR-encoding nucleic acid sequences of the invention may be engineered so as to modify processing or expression of CNTFR. For example, and not by way of limitation, the CNTFR gene may be combined with a promoter sequence and/or a ribosome binding site, or

25 a signal sequence may be inserted upstream of CNTFR encoding sequences to permit secretion of CNTFR and thereby facilitate harvesting or bioavailability.

Additionally, a given CNTFR can be mutated in vitro or in vivo, to create and/or destroy translation, initiation, and/or termination sequences, or to create variations in

30 coding regions and/or form new restriction endonuclease sites or destroy preexisting ones, to facilitate further in vitro modification. Any technique for mutagenesis known in the art can be used, including but not limited to, in vitro

35 site-directed mutagenesis (Hutchinson, et al., 1978, J.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-20-

Biol. Chem. 253:6551), use of TAB® linkers (Pharmacia), etc.

### 5.3. CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR PEPTIDES

5        - The invention also provides for CNTFR proteins, fragments and derivatives thereof, having the amino acid sequence set forth in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) or its functional equivalents and for proteins homologous to such protein, such homology being of at least about 30 percent.  
10      The invention also provides fragments or derivatives of CNTFR proteins which comprise at least six amino acids, comprise an antigenic determinant(s), or which are functionally active. The CNTFR protein having the amino acid sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) has a  
15      molecular weight of approximately 42 kd.

        CNTFR proteins, or fragments or derivatives thereof, of the invention include, but are not limited to, those containing, as a primary amino acid sequence, all or part of the amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in  
20      Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) including altered sequences in which functionally equivalent amino acid residues are substituted for residues within the sequence resulting in a silent change. For example, one or more amino acid residues within the sequence can be substituted by another amino  
25      acid of a similar polarity which acts as a functional equivalent, resulting in a silent alteration. Substitutes for an amino acid within the sequence may be selected from other members of the class to which the amino acid belongs. For example, the nonpolar (hydrophobic) amino acids include  
30      alanine, leucine, isoleucine, valine, proline, phenylalanine, tryptophan and methionine. The polar neutral amino acids include glycine, serine, threonine, cysteine, tyrosine, asparagine, and glutamine. The  
35      positively charged (basic) amino acids include arginine,

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-21-

lysine and histidine. The negatively charged (acidic) amino acids include aspartic acid and glutamic acid. Also included within the scope of the invention are CNTFR proteins or fragments or derivatives thereof which are differentially modified during or after translation, e.g.,  
5 by phosphorylation, glycosylation, crosslinking, acylation, proteolytic cleavage, linkage to an antibody molecule, membrane molecule or other ligand, (Ferguson et al., 1988, Ann. Rev. Biochem. 57:285-320).

10 The CNTFR peptides of the invention may be prepared by recombinant nucleic acid expression techniques or by chemical synthesis using standard peptide synthesis techniques.

#### 15 5.4. EXPRESSION OF CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

In order to express recombinant CNTFR, the nucleotide sequence coding for a CNTFR protein, or a portion thereof, can be inserted into an appropriate expression vector, i.e., a vector which contains the necessary elements for  
20 the transcription and translation of the inserted protein-coding sequence. The necessary transcription and translation signals can also be supplied by the native CNTFR gene and/or its flanking regions. A variety of host-vector systems may be utilized to express the  
25 protein-coding sequence. These include but are not limited to mammalian cell systems infected with virus (e.g., vaccinia virus, adenovirus, etc.); insect cell systems infected with virus (e.g., baculovirus); microorganisms such as yeast containing yeast vectors, or bacteria  
30 transformed with bacteriophage DNA, plasmid DNA, or cosmid DNA. The expression elements of these vectors vary in their strengths and specificities. Depending on the host-vector system utilized, any one of a number of suitable transcription and translation elements may be used.  
35

-22-

In a preferred specific embodiment of the invention, the CNTFR gene may be comprised in the pCMX expression vector, as deposited with the NRRL and assigned accession no. B-18790.

5 Any of the methods previously described for the insertion of DNA fragments into a vector may be used to construct expression vectors containing a chimeric gene consisting of appropriate transcriptional/translational control signals and the protein coding sequences. These methods may include in vitro recombinant DNA and synthetic  
10 techniques and in vivo recombinations (genetic recombination). Expression of nucleic acid sequence encoding CNTFR protein or peptide fragment may be regulated by a second nucleic acid sequence so that CNTFR protein or peptide is expressed in a host transformed with the  
15 recombinant DNA molecule. For example, expression of CNTFR may be controlled by any promoter/enhancer element known in the art. Promoters which may be used to control CNTFR expression include, but are not limited to, the SV40 early promoter region (Bernoist and Chambon, 1981, Nature  
20 290:304-310), the CMV promoter, the promoter contained in the 3' long terminal repeat of Rous sarcoma virus (Yamamoto, et al., 1980, Cell 22:787-797), the herpes thymidine kinase promoter (Wagner et al., 1981, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 78:144-1445), the regulatory sequences of  
25 the metallothionine gene (Brinster et al., 1982, Nature 296:39-42); prokaryotic expression vectors such as the  $\beta$ -lactamase promoter (Villa-Kamaroff, et al., 1978, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 75:3727-3731), or the tac promoter (DeBoer, et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.  
30 80:21-25), see also "Useful proteins from recombinant bacteria" in Scientific American, 1980, 242:74-94; promoter elements from yeast or other fungi such as the Gal 4 promoter, the ADC (alcohol dehydrogenase) promoter, PGK  
35 (phosphoglycerol kinase) promoter, alkaline phosphatase

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



-23-

promoter, and the following animal transcriptional control regions, which exhibit tissue specificity and have been utilized in transgenic animals: elastase I gene control region which is active in pancreatic acinar cells (Swift et al., 1984, Cell 38:639-646; Ornitz et al., 1986, Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. 50:399-409; MacDonald, 1987, Hepatology 7:425-515); insulin gene control region which is active in pancreatic beta cells (Hanahan, 1985, Nature 315:115-122), immunoglobulin gene control region which is active in lymphoid cells (Grosschedl et al., 1984, Cell 38:647-658; Adames et al., 1985, Nature 318:533-538; Alexander et al., 1987, Mol. Cell. Biol. 7:1436-1444), mouse mammary tumor virus control region which is active in testicular, breast, lymphoid and mast cells (Leder et al., 1986, Cell 45:485-495), albumin gene control region which is active in liver (Pinkert et al., 1987, Genes and Devel. 1:268-276), alpha-fetoprotein gene control region which is active in liver (Krumlauf et al., 1985, Mol. Cell. Biol. 5:1639-1648; Hammer et al., 1987, Science 235:53-58); alpha 1-antitrypsin gene control region which is active in the liver (Kelsey et al., 1987, Genes and Devel. 1:161-171), beta-globin gene control region which is active in myeloid cells (Mogram et al., 1985, Nature 315:338-340; Kollias et al., 1986, Cell 46:89-94); myelin basic protein gene control region which is active in oligodendrocyte cells in the brain (Readhead et al., 1987, Cell 48:703-712); myosin light chain-2 gene control region which is active in skeletal muscle (Sani, 1985, Nature 314:283-286), and gonadotropic releasing hormone gene control region which is active in the hypothalamus (Mason et al., 1986, Science 234:1372-1378).

Expression vectors containing CNTFR gene inserts can be identified by three general approaches: (a) DNA-DNA hybridization, (b) presence or absence of "marker" gene functions, and (c) expression of inserted sequences. In

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-24-

the first approach, the presence of a foreign gene inserted in an expression vector can be detected by DNA-DNA hybridization using probes comprising sequences that are homologous to an inserted CNTFR gene. In the second approach, the recombinant vector/host system can be identified and selected based upon the presence or absence of certain "marker" gene functions (e.g., thymidine kinase activity, resistance to antibiotics, transformation phenotype, occlusion body formation in baculovirus, etc.) caused by the insertion of foreign genes in the vector. For example, if the CNTFR gene is inserted within the marker gene sequence of the vector, recombinants containing the CNTFR insert can be identified by the absence of the marker gene function. In the third approach, recombinant expression vectors can be identified by assaying the foreign gene product expressed by the recombinant. Such assays can be based, for example, on the physical or functional properties of the CNTFR gene product, for example, by binding of the receptor to CNTF or to an antibody which directly recognizes the CNTFR.

In an additional embodiment, cells which do not normally express CNTFR may be transfected with recombinant-CNTFR encoding nucleic acid and then tested for the expression of functional CNTFR by exposing the transfectants to CNTF and then testing for an increase in cAMP levels.

Once a particular recombinant DNA molecule is identified and isolated, several methods known in the art may be used to propagate it. Once a suitable host system and growth conditions are established, recombinant expression vectors can be propagated and prepared in quantity. As previously explained, the expression vectors which can be used include, but are not limited to, the following vectors or their derivatives: human or animal viruses such as vaccinia virus or adenovirus; insect

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-25-

viruses such as baculovirus; yeast vectors; bacteriophage vectors (e.g., lambda), and plasmid and cosmid DNA vectors, to name but a few.

5 In addition, a host cell strain may be chosen which modulates the expression of the inserted sequences, or modifies and processes the gene product in the specific fashion desired. Expression from certain promoters can be elevated in the presence of certain inducers; thus, expression of the genetically engineered CNTFR protein may be controlled. Furthermore, different host cells have  
10 characteristic and specific mechanisms for the translational and post-translational processing and modification (e.g., glycosylation, cleavage) of proteins. Appropriate cell lines or host systems can be chosen to ensure the desired modification and processing of the  
15 foreign protein expressed. For example, expression in a bacterial system can be used to produce an unglycosylated core protein product. Expression in yeast may be used to produce a glycosylated product. Expression in mammalian cells can be used to ensure "native" glycosylation of the  
20 heterologous CNTFR protein. Furthermore, different vector/host expression systems may effect processing reactions such as proteolytic cleavages to different extents.

25 Once a recombinant which expresses the CNTFR gene is identified, the gene product should be analyzed. This can be achieved by assays based on the physical or functional properties of the product.

30 Once the CNTFR protein is identified, it may be isolated and purified by standard methods including chromatography (e.g., ion exchange, affinity, and sizing column chromatography), centrifugation, differential solubility, or by any other standard technique for the purification of proteins. In particular, CNTFR protein may  
35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-26-

be isolated by binding to an affinity column comprising CNTF bound to a stationary support.

Nucleic acid sequences complementary to DNA or RNA sequences encoding CNTFR or a functionally active portion thereof are also provided. In a particular aspect, antisense oligonucleotides can be synthesized, which are complementary to at least a portion of CNTFR mRNA.

#### 5.5. IDENTIFICATION OF MOLECULES RELATED TO THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

Multiple receptor-factor systems have been defined in which the same factor can bind to multiple receptors (see supra). As this may be the case for CNTF, the present invention allows for the identification of any additional CNTF receptors by the identical scheme used to obtain the CNTFR described here, except for the source of RNA used to prepare the cDNA expression library. A source may be chosen that would be likely to be expressing a distinct CNTF receptor; sources may be evaluated for the presence of CNTF-binding not attributable to the CNTFR (genetic probes and antibody reagents generated from the CNTFR sequence may be used to compare the protein responsible for CNTF binding in cell lines or tissue sources with the CNTF described here). In addition, because receptors are known which bind to more than one related factor (see supra), identification of the CNTFR should allow identification of any additional native ligands which bind this receptor.

In a further aspect of the invention, the CNTFR sequence may be used in the identification of CNTFR-related molecules. The CNTFR contains motifs which are shared with a variety of other receptors. The extracellular portion of the CNTFR contains both an "immunoglobulin" domain at its N-terminus, as well as a "cytokine receptor" domain which is separated from the "immunoglobulin" domain by a short hinge region. Although many receptors have homology to

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-27-

either the "immunoglobulin" or "cytokine receptor" domains, only one receptor - the IL-6 receptor - shares the same particular arrangement of these domains with the CNTFR. The IL-6 receptor is thus the protein most related to the CNTFR. Interestingly, the IL-6 receptor is also similar to the CNTFR in that it has a very short intracytoplasmic domain which is apparently not required for initiating responses upon IL-6 binding (Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). Recently, a novel signal transducer for the IL-6 receptor, termed gp 130, was molecularly cloned. This transducer does not bind IL-6 by itself, but it does confer high affinity binding to the IL-6 receptor and it is required to transduce the IL-6 signal (Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). Cloning of the CNTFR reveals that it shares important features with the IL-6 receptor that are not found in other known receptors, thus defining a new family of receptors. Homologies between these first two members of this receptor family, as defined by the present invention, may be used to identify additional related receptors by using DNA or antibody probes corresponding to homologous regions, or by using a polymerase chain reaction strategy together with degenerate oligonucleotides corresponding to shared regions of amino acid homology (e.g. Maisonpierre et al., 1990, Science 247:1146-1451). The present invention may also be used for the testing of whether the CNTFR utilizes the same signal transducer as the IL-6 receptor, or whether it utilizes a related molecule. Finally, the identification of CNTFR-related receptors should aid in the identification of novel ligands that would bind to these receptors.

According to the present invention, by screening a DNA library (comprising genomic DNA or, preferably, cDNA) with oligonucleotides corresponding to CNTFR sequence derived either from protein sequence data or from the nucleic acid sequence set forth in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1), clones may be

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-28-

identified which encode new members of the family described above. By decreasing the stringency of hybridization, the chances of identifying somewhat divergent members of the family may be increased. It may also be desirable to use sequences substantially shared by members of the family which have been sequenced; such highly conserved regions may be particularly useful in identifying additional members of the family. Library screening may be performed using, for example, the hybridization technique of Benton and Davis (1977, Science 196:180) or Grunstein and Hogness (1975, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 72:3961-3965). Clones identified by hybridization may then be further analyzed, and new family members may be identified by restriction fragment mapping and sequencing techniques according to methods well known in the art.

It may be desirable to utilize polymerase chain reaction (PCR) technology (Saiki et al., 1985, Science 230:1350-1354) to identify additional members of the CNTFR superfamily. For example, sense and antisense primers corresponding to known CNTFR sequence may be used in PCR, preferably using cDNA as template. It may be desirable to design these primers such that they include restriction enzyme cleavage sites which may facilitate the insertion of the products of PCR into appropriate cloning vectors. The products of PCR may be inserted into suitable vectors and the resulting clones may then be screened for new family members. Such screening may be performed using standard techniques, including hybridization analysis using probes corresponding to known sequence. For example, a series of probes representing different regions of a characterized CNTFR protein may be hybridized at low stringency to duplicate filters carrying DNA from clones generated using PCR, as outlined above. It may be observed that various clones may hybridize to some probes, but not others. New family members may also be identified by increasing the

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-29-

stringency of the hybridization conditions, wherein new members not identical to probes derived from known members would hybridize less strongly at higher stringency.

Alternatively, new family members may be identified by restriction mapping or sequencing analysis using standard techniques to reveal differences in restriction maps or sequences relative to known family members.

In additional embodiments, the present invention provides for molecules which form a complex with CNTFR and thereby may participate in CNTFR function. For example, it has been found that CNTFR does not, by sequence analysis, appear to possess a cytoplasmic domain; it may, in fact, be joined to a membrane through GPI linkage glycosyl-phosphatidylinositol (reviewed in Ferguson et al., 1988, Ann. Rev. Biochem. 57:285-320). This suggests that at least one other molecule forms an association with CNTFR to participate in signal transduction across the cell membrane. Such a molecule may be, for example, a protein such as GP130 that is found associated with IL-6R (Taga et al., 1989, Cell 58:573-581); this is particularly likely in light of the homology between CNTFR and the IL-6 receptor. Molecules which are associated with CNTFR at the cell membrane may be isolated and identified by any method known in the art, including but not limited to chemical cross-linkage, coprecipitation with anti-CNTFR antibody, or via a CNTF/tag, and/or by protein or lipid purification techniques.

Further, the present invention provides for molecules other than CNTF which may bind to CNTFR. Such molecules are defined as molecules which compete with CNTF, including other normal ligands, for CNTFR binding, and include peptides, peptide derivatives and non-peptide (e.g. peptidomimetic) compounds.

-30-

5.6. UTILITY OF THE INVENTION5.6.1. ASSAY SYSTEMS

The present invention provides for assay systems in which CNTF activity or activities similar to CNTF activity resulting from exposure to a peptide or non-peptide compound may be detected by measuring a physiological response to CNTF in a cell or cell line responsive to CNTF which expresses the CNTFR molecules of the invention. A physiological response may comprise any of the biological effects of CNTF, including but not limited to, those described in Section 2.2, supra, as well as the transcriptional activation of certain nucleic acid sequences (e.g. promoter/enhancer elements as well as structural genes), CNTF-related processing, translation, or phosphorylation, the induction of secondary processes in response to processes directly or indirectly induced by CNTF, and morphological changes, such as neurite sprouting, or the ability to support the survival of cells such as ciliary ganglion cells, motoneurons, Purkinje cells, or hippocampal neurons, to name but a few.

In a preferred specific embodiment of the invention, the functional interaction between CNTF and the CNTFR may be observed by detecting an increase in the production of "immediate early" primary response genes activated in response to many growth factor-stimulated transmembrane signals, including, but not limited to, c-fos and c-jun. For example, the activation of immediate early genes may be detected by Northern blot analysis of immediate early gene mRNA levels. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, c-fos or c-jun mRNA levels may be determined by Northern blot analysis of mRNA prepared from target cells incubated with CNTF, wherein CNTF activity is evidenced by an increase in levels of c-fos or c-jun. Of note, in particular embodiments of the invention, once target cells have been produced that contain recombinant CNTFR-encoding

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



-31-

nucleic acid or selected by virtue of binding to CNTF, it may be desirable to ensure that the target cells respond characteristically to CNTF or compounds with CNTF-like activity. In the context of the present invention, the term CNTF-like activity is construed to mean biological activity which is similar but may or may not be identical to that of CNTF; such activities would include but are not limited to those described in Section 2.2, supra or the activation of particular immediate early promoters such as the fos or jun promoters.

The present invention provides for the development of novel assay systems which may be utilized in the screening of compounds for CNTF- or CNTF-like activity. Target cells which bind to CNTF may be produced by transfection with CNTFR-encoding nucleic acid or may be identified and segregated by, for example, fluorescent-activated cell sorting, sedimentation of rosettes, or limiting dilution as described in Section 5.6.3, infra.

Once target cell lines are produced or identified, it may be desirable to select for cells which are exceptionally sensitive to CNTF. Such target cells may bear a greater number of CNTFRs; target cells bearing a relative abundance of CNTFRs could be identified by selecting target cells which bind to high levels of CNTF, for example cells which when incubated with CNTF/tag and subjected to immunofluorescence assay produce a relatively higher degree of fluorescence. Alternatively, cells which are exceptionally sensitive to CNTF may exhibit a relatively strong biological response, such as a sharp increase in immediate early gene products such as c-fos or c-jun, in response to CNTF binding. By developing assay systems using target cells which are extremely sensitive to CNTF, the present invention provides for methods of screening for CNTF or CNTF-like activity which are capable of detecting low levels of CNTF activity.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-32-

In particular, using recombinant DNA techniques, the present invention provides for CNTF target cells which are engineered to be highly sensitive to CNTF. For example, the CNTF-receptor gene, cloned according to the methods set forth in Section 5.1, may be inserted into cells which are naturally CNTF responsive such that the recombinant CNTFR gene is expressed at high levels and the resulting engineered target cells express a high number of CNTFRs on their cell surface.

Alternatively, or additionally, the target cells may be engineered to comprise a recombinant gene which is expressed at high levels in response to CNTF/receptor binding. Such a recombinant gene may preferably be associated with a readily detectable product. For example, and not by way of limitation, transcriptional control regions (i.e. promoter/enhancer regions) from an immediate early gene may be used to control the expression of a reporter gene in a construct which may be introduced into target cells. The immediate early gene/reporter gene construct, when expressed at high levels in target cells by virtue of a strong promoter/enhancer or high copy number, may be used to produce an amplified response to CNTFR binding. For example, and not by way of limitation, a CNTF-responsive promoter (such as the c-fos or c-jun promoter) may be used to control the expression of detectable reporter genes including  $\beta$ -galactosidase, growth hormone, chloramphenicol acetyl transferase, neomycin phosphotransferase, luciferase, or  $\beta$ -glucuronidase. Detection of the products of these reporter genes, well known to one skilled in the art, may serve as a sensitive indicator for CNTF or CNTF-like activity of pharmaceutical compounds.

The CNTFR-encoding or reporter gene constructs discussed above may be inserted into target cells using any method known in the art, including but not limited to

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-33-

transfection, electroporation, calcium phosphate/DEAE dextran methods, and cell gun, as well as the production of transgenic animals bearing the above-mentioned constructs as transgenes, and from which CNTF target cells may be selected using the methods discussed supra.

5           Assay systems of the present invention enable the efficient screening of pharmaceutical compounds for utility in the treatment of CNTF-associated diseases. For example, and not by way of limitation, it may be desirable to screen  
10 a pharmaceutical agent for CNTF activity and therapeutic efficacy in cerebellar degeneration. In a specific embodiment of the invention, Purkinje cells responsive to CNTF may be identified and isolated, and then cultured in microwells in a multiwell culture plate. Culture medium  
15 with added test agent, or added CNTF, in numerous dilutions may be added to the wells, together with suitable controls. The cells may then be examined for improved survival, neurite sprouting, and so forth, and the activity of test agent and CNTF, as well as their relative  
20 activities, may be determined. As another example, motorneuron lesions have been shown to respond favorably to CNTF (Sendtner et al., 1990, Nature 345:440). It may, therefore, be desirable to identify CNTF-like compounds which can, like CNTF, prevent motorneuron cell death  
25 following axotomy. CNTF responsive motorneurons could be utilized in assay systems to identify compounds useful in treating motorneuron diseases. Considering that CNTF has been found to be effective in preventing motorneuron cell death following axotomy, which clearly is an extremely  
30 important observation when contemplating treatments for spinal cord injuries, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, and diabetic neuropathy, in designing drugs which would be effective in treating these disorders, including drugs which may be required to pass the blood brain barrier, it  
35 is essential to have access to a reliable and sensitive

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-34-

screening system such as the methods the present invention provide. For another example, if a particular disease is found to be associated with a defective CNTF response in a particular tissue, a rational treatment for the disease would be supplying the patient with exogenous CNTF.

5 However, it may be desirable to develop molecules which have a longer half-life than endogenous CNTF, or which act as CNTF agonists, or which are targeted to a particular tissue. Accordingly, the methods of the invention can be used to produce efficient and sensitive screening systems  
10 which can be used to identify molecules with the desired properties. Similar assay systems could be used to identify CNTF antagonists.

#### 15 5.6.2. EXPERIMENTAL MODEL SYSTEMS

The present invention also provides for experimental model systems for studying the physiological role of CNTF. In these model systems, CNTFR protein, peptide fragment, or a derivative thereof, may be either supplied to the system or produced within the system. Such model systems could be  
20 used to study the effects of CNTF excess or CNTF depletion. The experimental model systems may be used to study the effects of increased or decreased response to CNTF in cell or tissue cultures, in whole animals, in particular cells or tissues within whole animals or tissue culture systems,  
25 or over specified time intervals (including during embryogenesis) in embodiments in which CNTFR expression is controlled by an inducible or developmentally regulated promoter. In particular embodiments of the invention, the  
30 CMV promoter may be used to control expression of CNTFR in transgenic animals. The term "transgenic animals," as used herein, refers to non-human transgenic animals, including transgenic mosaics, which carry a transgene in some or all of their cells, which include any non-human species, and  
35 which are produced by any method known in the art,

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-35-

including, but not limited to microinjection, cell fusion, transfection, electroporation, etc. For example, the animals may be produced by a microinjection of zygotes method such as that set forth in "Brinster et al, 1989, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:4438-4442.

5       The present invention also provides for model systems for autoimmune disease in which an autoimmune response is directed toward CNTFR. Such models comprise animals which have been immunized with immunogenic amounts of CNTFR and preferably found to produce anti-CNTFR antibodies and/or  
10       cell-mediated immunity. To produce such a model system, it may be desirable to administer the CNTFR in conjunction with an immune adjuvant, such as Bacille Calmette Guerin (BCG).

15               5.6.2.1. MODELS FOR INCREASED CNTF ACTIVITY

For example, and not by way of limitation, an experimental model system may be created which may be used to study the effects of excess CNTF activity. In such a system, the response to CNTF may be increased by  
20       engineering an increased number of CNTFRs on cells of the model system relative to cells which have not been so engineered. It may be preferable to provide an increased number of CNTFRs selectively on cells which normally  
25       express CNTFRs.

Cells may be engineered to produce increased numbers of CNTFR by infection with a virus which carries a CNTFR gene of the invention. Alternatively, the CNTFR gene may be provided to the cells by transfection.

30       If the model system is an animal, a recombinant CNTFR gene may be introduced into the cells of the animal by infection with a virus which carries the CNTFR gene. Alternatively, a transgenic animal may be created which carries the CNTFR gene as a transgene.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-36-

In order to ensure expression of CNTFR, the CNTFR gene should be placed under the control of a suitable promoter sequence. It may be desirable to put the CNTFR gene under the control of a constitutive and/or tissue specific promoter, including but not limited to the CNS neuron specific enolase, neurofilament, and tyrosine hydroxylase promoter, an inducible promoter, such as the metallothionein promoter, the UV activated promoter in the human immunodeficiency virus long terminal repeat (Valeri et al., 1988, Nature 333:78-81), or the CMV promoter (as contained in pCMX, infra) or a developmentally regulated promoter.

By increasing the number of cellular CNTFRs, the response to endogenous CNTF may be increased. If the model system contains little or no CNTF, CNTF may be added to the system. It may also be desirable to add additional CNTF to the model system in order to evaluate the effects of excess CNTF activity. Over expressing CNTF (or secreted CNTF) may be the preferable method for studying the effects of elevated levels of CNTF on cells already expressing CNTFR. More preferably would be to express CNTFR in all cells (general expression) and determine which cells are then endowed with functional responsiveness to CNTF, thus allowing the potential identification of a second receptor component, if one exists.

#### 5.6.2.2. MODELS FOR DECREASED CNTF ACTIVITY

Alternatively, as an example, and not by way of limitation, an experimental model system may be created which may be used to study the effects of diminished CNTF activity. This system may permit identification of processes or neurons which require CNTF, and which may represent potential therapeutic targets. In such a system, the response to CNTF may be decreased by providing recombinant CNTFRs which are not associated with a cell

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-37-

surface or which are engineered so as to be ineffective in transducing a response to CNTF.

For example, CNTFR protein, peptide, or derivative may be supplied to the system such that the supplied receptor may compete with endogenous CNTFR for CNTF binding, thereby  
5 diminishing the response to CNTF. The CNTFR may be a cell free receptor which is either added to the system or produced by the system. For example, a CNTFR protein which lacks the transmembrane domain may be produced by cells  
10 within the system, such as an anchorless CNTFR that may be secreted from the producing cell. Alternatively, CNTFR protein, peptide or derivative may be added to an extracellular space within the system.

In additional embodiments of the invention, a recombinant CNTFR gene may be used to inactivate or "knock  
15 out" the endogenous gene by homologous recombination, and thereby create a CNTFR deficient cell, tissue, or animal. For example, and not by way of limitation, a recombinant CNTFR gene may be engineered to contain an insertional mutation, for example the neo gene, which inactivates  
20 CNTFR. Such a construct, under the control of a suitable promoter, may be introduced into a cell, such as an embryonic stem cell, by a technique such as transfection, transduction, injection, etc. Cells containing the  
25 construct may then be selected by G418 resistance. Cells which lack an intact CNTFR gene may then be identified, e.g. by Southern blotting or Northern blotting or assay of expression. Cells lacking an intact CNTFR gene may then be fused to early embryo cells to generate transgenic animals  
30 deficient in CNTFR. A comparison of such an animal with an animal not expressing endogenous CNTF would reveal that either the two phenotypes match completely or that they do not, implying the presence of additional CNTF-like factors or receptors.

35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-38-

Such an animal may be used to define specific neuronal populations, or any other in vivo processes, normally dependent upon CNTF. Thus, these populations or processes may be expected to be effected if the animal did not express CNTFR and therefore could not respond to CNTF.

5 Alternatively, a recombinant CNTFR protein, peptide, or derivative which competes with endogenous receptor for CNTF may be expressed on the surface of cells within the system, but may be engineered so as to fail to transduce a response to CNTF binding.

10 The recombinant CNTFR proteins, peptides or derivatives described above may bind to CNTF with an affinity that is similar to or different from the affinity of endogenous CNTFR to CNTF. To more effectively diminish the response to CNTF, the CNTFR protein, peptide, or  
15 derivative may desirably bind to CNTF with a greater affinity than that exhibited by the native receptor.

If the CNTFR protein, peptide, or derivative is produced within the model system, nucleic acid encoding the CNTFR protein, peptide, or derivative may be supplied to  
20 the system by infection, transduction, transfection, etc. or as a transgene. As discussed supra, the CNTFR gene may be placed under the control of a suitable promoter, which may be, for example, a tissue-specific promoter or an inducible promoter or developmentally regulated promoter.  
25

In a specific embodiment of the invention the endogenous CNTFR gene of a cell may be replaced by a mutant CNTFR gene by homologous recombination.

In a further embodiment of the invention, CNTFR  
30 expression may be reduced by providing CNTFR expressing cells with an amount of CNTFR anti-sense RNA or DNA effective to reduce expression of CNTFR protein.

35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



-39-

5.6.3. DIAGNOSTIC APPLICATIONS

According to the present invention, CNTFR probes may be used to identify cells and tissues which are responsive to CNTF in normal or diseased states. The present  
5 invention provides for methods for identifying cells which are responsive to CNTF comprising detecting CNTFR expression in such cells. CNTFR expression may be evidenced by transcription of CNTFR mRNA or production of  
10 CNTFR protein. CNTFR expression may be detected using probes which identify CNTFR nucleic acid or protein.

One variety of probe which may be used to detect CNTFR expression is a nucleic acid probe, which may be used to detect CNTFR-encoding RNA by any method known in the art, including, but not limited to, in situ hybridization,  
15 Northern blot analysis, or PCR related techniques.

Another variety of probe which may be used is tagged CNTF, as set forth in U. S. Serial No. 07/532,285, the complete text of which is incorporated by reference herein.

According to the present invention, the term "tagged"  
20 CNTF should be construed to mean a CNTF molecule which is attached to a second detectable compound (the "tag"). The detectable compound may comprise radioisotope, a fluorescent moiety, or a ligand capable of binding to a  
25 receptor, or a substance which may be detected colorimetrically or which has catalytic activity. In preferred embodiments, the tag may comprise an antigenic determinant such that antibody is capable of binding to the tag. In alternative embodiments the tag itself may be an  
30 antibody; in a specific embodiment of the invention the tag is monoclonal antibody RP3-17. It is desirable that the tag not interfere with the biological activity of CNTF and that the methods of detection of the tag would not substantially interfere with the binding of CNTF to its  
35 receptor.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-40-

The tag may be attached to CNTF using any method known in the art. In preferred embodiments of the invention, the tag is covalently linked to CNTF but in some cases it may be desirable that the tag be attached by noncovalent forces (for example, if the tag comprises an immunoglobulin molecule).

The tag may be of any molecular size suitable for preserving its detector function without substantially altering the biological activity of the attached CNTF. If the tag is to provide an antigenic determinant, it may be desirable that it comprise at least about 5-15 amino acids.

For purposes of illustration, and not by way of limitation, in one preferred specific method of the invention, CNTF may be tagged using a "patch" polymerase chain reaction in which recombinant neurotrophic factor (CNTF) is engineered to carry at its C-terminal end ten amino acids corresponding to a known antigenic determinant. For example, and not by way of limitation, this antigenic determinant may correspond to a defined epitope of the human c-myc proto-oncogene protein.

For example, and not by way of limitation, the "patch" PCR method may be used to attach the ten amino acid myc tag as follows (the present invention provides for any amino acid tag attached by analogous methods). A 5' PCR primer corresponding to an CNTF sequence upstream of a unique restriction enzyme cleavage site in a bacterial expression construct may be utilized in PCR reaction with a "patch" primer comprising nucleic acid sequence corresponding to 3' terminal CNTF sequence and nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide tag, using cDNA from CNTF-responsive cells as template.

The PCR reaction should also comprise a 3' primer corresponding to the patch primer sequence and including nucleic acid sequence which incorporates unique restriction endonuclease cleavage sites. In preferred embodiments, the

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-41-

5' and 3' primers may be used in excess of patch primer, such that PCR amplification between 5' and patch primers may cease after a few PCR cycles whereas amplification between the 5' and 3' primers may initiate and continue to produce a high yield of full length CNTF/tag sequence. The "patch" technique overcomes the need for long primers whose synthesis may be difficult and time consuming. The amplified CNTF/tag product may be gel purified, digested with restriction enzymes which cleave at the sites engineered into the termini of the product, and then subcloned into the corresponding restriction sites of an expression vector. For example, to produce CNTF-myc tag, the following primers may be used: 5' primer = 5' GAC TCG AGT CGA CAT CGG AGG CTG ATG GGA TGCC 3' (SEQ ID:14); patch primer = 3' CTA AAG ACT CCT CCT AGA CAT CGC CGG CGT ATCG 5' (SEQ ID NO:15); primers may be used in a ratio of 100 ng 5' primer/100 ng 3' primer/1ng patch primer; for details see Section 6, *infra*. The expression of CNTF/tag may be carried out as described for the expression of recombinant CNTF in U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 07/570,651, entitled "Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor," filed August 20, 1990 or PCT Publication No WO91/04316, published April 4, 1991 by Sendtner et al.

The present invention also provides for a tag which comprises an immunoglobulin molecule, or a portion thereof, e.g. an Fc, F(ab)<sub>2</sub>, or F(ab)' fragment of an antibody molecule. The tag should bind to CNTF, and may be a polyclonal or monoclonal antibody.

According to the invention, tagged CNTF may be incubated with cells under conditions which would promote the binding or attachment of CNTF to said cells. In most cases, this may be achieved under standard culture conditions. For example, in a preferred embodiment of the invention, cells may be incubated for about 30 minutes in the presence of tagged CNTF. If the tag is an antibody

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-42-

molecule, it may be preferable to allow CNTF to bind to cells first and subsequently wash cells to remove unbound ligand and then add anti-CNTF antibody tag.

5 In particular embodiments of the invention, tagged CNTF on the surface of CNTF-responsive cells, hereafter called target cells, may be detected by rosetting assays in which indicator cells that are capable of binding to the tag are incubated with cells bearing CNTF/tag such that they adhere to CNTF/tag on the target cells and the bound indicator cells form rosette-like clusters around CNTF-tag bearing cells. These rosettes may be visualized by standard microscopic techniques on plated cells, or, alternatively, may allow separation of rosetted and non-rosetted cells by density centrifugation. In a preferred specific embodiment of the invention, target cells, such as neuronal cells, may be harvested and plated at a concentration of about 200 cells/well in a multiple well (e.g. 60 well) culture plate in medium such as RPMI 1640 with 10% fetal bovine serum and 2 mM glutamine. Plated cells may be incubated for about 16 to 24 hours at 37°C in a humidified 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere incubator to allow cells to attach. Next, excess cell culture media may be removed and the cells may be incubated for about 30 minutes at room temperature with tagged CNTF. The cells may then be washed several times with PBS (with calcium and magnesium) supplemented with 1% bovine serum albumin (BSA) to remove unbound ligand and then incubated for about 30 minutes at room temperature with about 10 µg/ml of antibody which recognizes the tag molecule. Cells may then be washed several times with PBS to remove unbound antibody. Then, the target cells (bearing CNTF/tag bound to anti-tag antibody) may be incubated at room temperature for 1 hour with about a 0.2% (v/v) suspension of rosetting indicator cells which bind to the anti-tag antibody (such as indicator cells bearing rabbit-anti-mouse immunoglobulin).

10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-43-

The plates may then be washed with PBS and examined under a phase contrast microscope for rosettes. For example, if the anti-tag antibody is produced by a mouse, indicator cells may be produced by coating erythrocytes (such as human O+ erythrocytes) with anti-(mouse immunoglobulin) antibody produced by another species. Indicator cells may be prepared by incubating erythrocytes with anti-immunoglobulin antibody (at a concentration greater than about 1 mg/ml) in the presence of 0.01%  $\text{CrCl}_3 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$  diluted in saline according to the procedure of Albino et al. (1981, J. Exp. Med. 154:1764-1778). Alternatively, magnetic beads or other methods known in the art may be used.

In alternative embodiments of the invention, tagged CNTF on the surface of target cells may be detected using immunofluorescent techniques in which a molecule which reacts with the tag, preferably an antibody, directly or indirectly produces fluorescent light. The fluorescence may either be observed under a microscope or used to segregate CNTF/tag-bearing cells by fluorescence activated cell sorting techniques. In a preferred specific embodiment of the invention presented by way of example, target cells may be triturated and resuspended in assay buffer containing CNTF/tag (in excess concentration) and sodium azide (0.05%) for about 30 minutes at 4°C. Cells may then be washed three times in assay buffer by centrifugation at 800 rpm for 5 minutes. Cells may then be incubated with anti-tag antibody at a concentration of about 10  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  for about 30 minutes at 4°C, washed as above, and then incubated for about 30 minutes at 4°C with biotinylated anti-immunoglobulin and streptavidin-Texas Red conjugate. The cells may then be washed, resuspended in mounting solution, coverslipped, and then examined by fluorescent microscopy.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-44-

The present invention also provides for methods for detecting other forms of tags, such as chromogenic tags, catalytic tags, etc. The detection methods for any particular tag will depend on the conditions necessary for producing a signal from the tag, but should be readily discernible by one skilled in the art.

Yet another variety of probe which may be used is anti-CNTFR antibody.

According to the invention, CNTFR protein, or fragments or derivatives thereof, may be used as an immunogen to generate anti-CNTFR antibodies. By providing for the production of relatively abundant amounts of CNTFR protein using recombinant techniques for protein synthesis (based upon the CNTFR nucleic acid sequences of the invention), the problem of limited quantities of CNTFR has been obviated.

To further improve the likelihood of producing an anti-CNTFR immune response, the amino acid sequence of CNTFR may be analyzed in order to identify portions of the molecule which may be associated with increased immunogenicity. For example, the amino acid sequence may be subjected to computer analysis to identify surface epitopes which present computer-generated plots of hydrophilicity, surface probability, flexibility, antigenic index, amphiphilic helix, amphiphilic sheet, and secondary structure of CNTFR. Alternatively, the deduced amino acid sequences of CNTFR from different species could be compared, and relatively non-homologous regions identified; these non-homologous regions would be more likely to be immunogenic across various species.

For preparation of monoclonal antibodies directed toward CNTFR, any technique which provides for the production of antibody molecules by continuous cell lines in culture may be used. For example, the hybridoma technique originally developed by Kohler and Milstein

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

(1975, Nature 256:495-497), as well as the trioma technique, the human B-cell hybridoma technique (Kozbor et al., 1983, Immunology Today 4:72), and the EBV-hybridoma technique to produce human monoclonal antibodies (Cole et al., 1985, in "Monoclonal Antibodies and Cancer Therapy," Alan R. Liss, Inc. pp. 77-96) and the like are within the scope of the present invention.

The monoclonal antibodies for therapeutic use may be human monoclonal antibodies or chimeric human-mouse (or other species) monoclonal antibodies. Human monoclonal antibodies may be made by any of numerous techniques known in the art (e.g., Teng et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:7308-7312; Kozbor et al., 1983, Immunology Today 4:72-79; Olsson et al., 1982, Meth. Enzymol. 92:3-16). Chimeric antibody molecules may be prepared containing a mouse antigen-binding domain with human constant regions (Morrison et al., 1984, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 81:6851, Takeda et al., 1985, Nature 314:452).

Various procedures known in the art may be used for the production of polyclonal antibodies to epitopes of CNTFR. For the production of antibody, various host animals can be immunized by injection with CNTFR protein, or fragment or derivative thereof, including but not limited to rabbits, mice, rats, etc. Various adjuvants may be used to increase the immunological response, depending on the host species, and including but not limited to Freund's (complete and incomplete), mineral gels such as aluminum hydroxide, surface active substances such as lysolecithin, pluronic polyols, polyanions, peptides, oil emulsions, keyhole limpet hemocyanins, dinitrophenol, and potentially useful human adjuvants such as BCG (Bacille Calmette-Guerin) and, Corynebacterium parvum.

A molecular clone of an antibody to a CNTFR epitope can be prepared by known techniques. Recombinant DNA methodology (see e.g., Maniatis et al., 1982, Molecular

-46-

Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York) may be used to construct nucleic acid sequences which encode a monoclonal antibody molecule, or antigen binding region thereof.

5 Antibody molecules may be purified by known techniques, e.g., immunoabsorption or immunoaffinity chromatography, chromatographic methods such as HPLC (high performance liquid chromatography), or a combination thereof, etc.

10 The present invention provides for antibody molecules as well as fragments of such antibody molecules. Antibody fragments which contain the idiotype of the molecule can be generated by known techniques. For example, such fragments include but are not limited to: the  $F(ab')_2$  fragment which  
15 can be produced by pepsin digestion of the antibody molecule; the Fab' fragments which can be generated by reducing the disulfide bridges of the  $F(ab')_2$  fragment, and the Fab fragments which can be generated by treating the antibody molecule with papain and a reducing agent.

20 The abovementioned probes may be used experimentally to identify cells or tissues which hitherto had not been shown to express CNTFR. Furthermore, these methods may be used to identify the expression of CNTFR by aberrant tissues, such as malignancies. In additional embodiments,  
25 these methods may be used diagnostically to compare the expression of CNTFR in cells, fluids, or tissue from a patient suffering from a disorder with comparable cells, fluid, or tissue from a healthy person. Fluid is construed to refer to any body fluid, but particularly blood or  
30 cerebrospinal fluid. A difference in the levels of expression of CNTFR in the patient compared to a healthy person may indicate that the patient's disorder may be primarily or secondarily related to CNTF metabolism. An increase in levels of CNTFR, for example, could either  
35 indicate that the patient's disorder is associated with an

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



-47-

increased sensitivity to normal levels of CNTF or, alternatively, may suggest that the patient's CNTF levels are low such that the number of receptors is increased by way of compensation. These etiologies may be distinguished from one another by administering CNTF to the patient. If  
5 his condition worsens, he may suffer from CNTF hypersensitivity; if it improves, he may be suffering from a CNTF deficiency. CNTF or CNTF antagonist-based therapeutic regimens may be chosen accordingly.  
Differences in expression can be detected at the protein  
10 and/or RNA level; i.e. by measuring amounts of CNTFR protein or CNTFR RNA in a patient relative to those amounts in healthy persons.

The abovementioned probes may also be used to select  
15 CNTF-responsive cells for use in assay systems, as described above, or in U. S. Application Serial No. 07/532,285, or according to standard methods of cell selection or cell sorting.

#### 20 5.6.4. THERAPEUTIC APPLICATIONS

The present invention also provides for methods in which a patient suffering from a disorder, such as neurologic disorder is treated with an effective amount of CNTFR protein, peptide fragment, or derivative of the  
25 invention. Therapeutic methods comprising administering CNTFR, CNTFR agonists, CNTFR antagonists (which compete with endogenous CNTF), or anti-CNTFR antibodies are within the scope of the present invention.

The present invention also provides for pharmaceutical  
30 compositions comprising CNTFR protein, peptide fragment, or derivative in a suitable pharmacologic carrier.

The CNTFR protein, peptide fragment, or derivative may be administered systemically or locally. Any appropriate mode of administration known in the art may be used,  
35 including, but not limited to, intravenous, intrathecal,

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-48-

intraarterial, intranasal, oral, subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, or by local injection or surgical implant. Sustained release formulations are also provided for.

As our understanding of neurodegenerative disease/neurotrauma becomes clearer, it may become apparent  
5 that it would be beneficial to decrease the trophic effect of endogenous CNTF. Therefore, in areas of nervous system trauma, it may be desirable to provide CNTF antagonists, including, but not limited to, cell-free CNTFR which may compete with endogenous cellular receptor for CNTF binding.  
10 Under such circumstances, it may be desirable to provide CNTF antagonist locally at the injury site rather than systemically. Use of a CNTFR providing implant may be desirable.

Alternatively, certain conditions may benefit from an  
15 increase in CNTF responsiveness. It may therefore be beneficial to increase the number or binding affinity of CNTFRs in patients suffering from such conditions. This could be achieved through gene therapy. Selective expression of recombinant CNTFR in appropriate cells could  
20 be achieved using CNTFR genes controlled by tissue specific or inducible promoters or by producing localized infection with replication defective viruses carrying a recombinant CNTFR gene. Conditions which may benefit from increased sensitivity to CNTF include particularly but are not  
25 limited to motorneuron disorders including amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Werdnig-Hoffmann disease, chronic proximal spinal muscular atrophy, and post-polio syndrome. Such treatment may also be used for treatment of  
30 neurological disorders associated with diabetes, Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, and Huntington's chorea.

Further, the invention provides for treatment of disorders of a specific tissue or cell-type by  
35 administration of CNTF, which tissue or cell-type has been

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

identified as expressing CNTF receptors. In a specific embodiment, it has been shown that the CNTFR gene is expressed in muscle cells (see Section 8, *infra*), and that CNTF prevents the loss of both muscle weight and myofibrillar protein content associated with denervation atrophy in vivo (see Section 9, *infra*). Accordingly, the present invention provides for methods of treating muscle cell disorders, or disorders involving the neuromuscular unit, comprising administering to a patient in need of such treatment (i) a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence which encodes CNTFR or a functionally active portion or derivative thereof, such that it can be expressed, or (ii) CNTF, or a functionally active portion or derivative thereof. Such disorders include but are not limited to those in which atrophic or dystrophic change of muscle is the fundamental pathological finding. For example, such muscle atrophy can result from denervation (loss of contact by the muscle with its nerve) due to nerve trauma; degenerative, metabolic, or inflammatory (e.g., Guillian-Barre syndrome) peripheral neuropathy, or damage to nerves caused by environmental toxins or drugs. In another embodiment, the muscle atrophy results from denervation due to a motor neuronopathy. Such motor neuronopathies include, but are not limited to: adult motor neuron disease, including Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS or Lou Gehrig's disease); infantile and juvenile spinal muscular atrophies, and autoimmune motor neuronopathy with multifocal conduction block. In another embodiment, the muscle atrophy results from chronic disuse. Such disuse atrophy may stem from conditions including, but not limited to: paralysis due to stroke, spinal cord injury, brain trauma or other Central Nervous System injury; skeletal immobilization due to trauma (such as fracture, sprain or dislocation) or prolonged bed rest. In yet another embodiment, the muscle atrophy results from

-50-

metabolic stress or nutritional insufficiency, including, but not limited to, the cachexia of cancer and other chronic illnesses, fasting or rhabdomyolysis, endocrine disorders such as, but not limited to, disorders of the thyroid gland and diabetes. The muscle atrophy can also be  
5 due to a muscular dystrophy syndrome, including but not limited to the Duchenne, Becker, myotonic, Fascioscapulohumeral, Emery-Dreifuss, oculopharyngeal, scapulohumeral, limb girdle, and congenital types, and the dystrophy known as Hereditary Distal Myopathy. In a  
10 further embodiment, the muscle atrophy is due to a congenital myopathy, including, but not limited to Benign Congenital Hypotonia, Central Core disease, Nemaline Myopathy, and Myotubular (centronuclear) myopathy. In  
15 addition, CNTFR-encoding nucleic acids or CNTF and its active fragments or derivatives may be of use in the treatment of acquired (toxic or inflammatory) myopathies. Myopathies which occur as a consequence of an inflammatory disease of muscle, include, but are not limited to  
20 polymyositis and dermatomyositis. Toxic myopathies may be due to agents including, but not limited to amiodarone, chloroquine, clofibrate, colchicine, doxorubicin, ethanol, hydroxychloroquine, organophosphates, perihexiline, and vincristine.

25 In a further embodiment of the invention, patients that suffer from an excess of CNTFR, hypersensitivity to CNTF, excess CNTF, etc. may be treated by administering an effective amount of anti-sense RNA or anti-sense oligodeoxyribonucleotides corresponding to the CNTFR gene  
30 coding region thereby decreasing expression of CNTFR.

35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-51-

6. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION CLONING OF THE CILIARY  
NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR

6.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

6.1.1. CONSTRUCTION OF A CNTF-RECEPTOR  
EXPRESSION LIBRARY

5 SH-SY5Y cells (originally obtained from Dr. June  
Biedler) were used as a source of mRNA for construction of  
a cDNA library using the pCMX expression vector (described  
in copending U. S. patent Application Serial No. 07/678,408  
filed March 28, 1991, see supra), a derivative of the pCDM8  
10 vector (Seed, 1987, Nature 329:840-842). Inserts for the  
cDNA library were selected on an agarose gel for sizes  
larger than 1 kb.

6.1.2. "PANNING" METHOD

15 The "panning" method developed by Seed and Aruffo  
(1987, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 84:3365-3369) was  
modified as follows: instead of incubating the cells with  
antibodies recognizing the receptor, cells were incubated  
first with CNTF/myc (1  $\mu$ g/ml) on ice for 30 minutes, spun  
20 through PBS/2% Ficoll to remove excess ligand, and then  
incubated with 9E10 antibody obtained from Oncogene  
Sciences, Manhasset, N.Y. for 30 minutes on ice. This was  
followed by another spin through PBS/2% Ficoll and  
"panning" on plates coated with anti-myc peptide mouse  
25 monoclonal antibody obtained from Sigma. The plates were  
prepared as follows: bacteriological 60 mm plates (Falcon  
1007 or the equivalent), or 10 cm dishes such as Fisher 8-  
757-12 were coated with anti-myc mouse monoclonal antibody,  
diluted to 10 micrograms per ml in 50 mM Tris HCl pH 9.5.  
30 3 ml of antibody was used to coat each 6 cm dish or 10 ml  
was used per 10 cm dish; plates were exposed to antibody  
for about 1.5 hrs, then antibody was removed to the next  
dish, allowed to stand for 1.5 hrs, and then removed again  
to a third dish. Plates were washed three times with 0.15  
35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-52-

M NaCl (a wash bottle is convenient for this), and incubated with 3 ml 1 mg/ml BSA in PBS overnight. In particular "panning" was performed as follows: cells were cultured in 100 mm dishes. Medium was aspirated from each dish, and 2 ml PBS/0.5 mM EDTA/0.02% azide was added and the mixture was incubated at 37° for 30 min to detach cells from the dish. The cells were triturated vigorously with a short pasteur pipet, collected from each dish in a centrifuge tube, and spun 4 min at a setting of 2.5 (200 x g). Cells were resuspended in 0.5-1.0 ml PBS/EDTA/azide/5% FBS and incubated with CNTF/myc for 30 min on ice. An equal volume of PBS/EDTA/azide was added, layered carefully on 3 ml PBS/EDTA/azide/2% Ficoll, spun 4 min at a setting of 2.5, and the supernatant was aspirated in one smooth movement. The cells were then incubated with 9E10 antibody for 30 minutes on ice, and the spin through PBS/EDTA/azide/2% Ficoll was repeated. The cells were taken up in 0.5 ml PBS/EDTA/azide and aliquots were added to anti-myc mouse monoclonal antibody-coated dishes containing 3 ml PBS/EDTA/azide/5% FBS. Cells were added from at most two 60 mm dishes to one 60 mm antibody coated plate, and allowed to sit at room temperature 1-3 hours. Excess cells not adhering to dish were removed by gentle washing with PBS/5% serum or with medium (2 or 3 washes of 3 ml were usually sufficient).

#### 6.1.3. IDENTIFICATION OF CLONES CONTAINING THE CILIARY NEUROTROPHIC FACTOR RECEPTOR GENE

Plasmid DNA from the expression library was transfected into COSM5 cells (approximately 250-500 ng per 100 mm dish; 2 dishes were transfected), using DEAE/chloroquine according to standard procedures. Two days after transfection, cells were detached from their

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-53-

dishes and subjected to the Aruffo/Seed panning procedure modified as described supra.

After washing nonadhering cells from the plates, Hirt supernatants (Hirt, 1967, J. Mol. Biol. 26:365-369) were prepared, and plasmid DNA was precipitated in the presence of 10-20  $\mu$ g of tRNA. The resulting DNA was introduced into DH10B bacteria (Electromax, BRL) by electroporation according to the manufacturer's instructions. Cultures grown from the electroporated bacteria were used to prepare plasmid DNA for another round of transfection and panning; a plate of COS cells transfected with this plasmid DNA clearly revealed a large number of COS cells expressing the CNTFR by an indirect iodinated-antibody binding assay (see Figure 1B for representative data, see below for assay methods). After a second round of panning/plasmid DNA isolation/electroporation on these transfectants, the bacterial transformants resulting from the electroporation step were plated out on ampicillin plates. Individual bacterial colonies were picked, and plasmid DNA prepared from each of the clones was transfected individually into COS cells for assay. Out of 15 plasmids tested, 14 resulted in transfected COS cells expressing CNTF binding sites by a variety of assays, including the indirect antibody binding assay and fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis described infra.

#### 6.1.4. DIRECT $^{125}$ I-hCNTF BINDING ASSAY

COS cells were transfected with plasmid DNA from the library, the enriched library, or individual clones. After 48 hours, the media was removed and replaced with 0.25 ml of binding buffer (RPMI 1640 with 10% FBS and 0.1%  $\text{NaN}_3$ ) containing  $^{125}$ I-hCNTF alone or with unlabelled hCNTF. Incubations with  $^{125}$ I-hCNTF were for 60 minutes at room temperature. After incubations were complete, the  $^{125}$ I-hCNTF solution was removed and the cells were washed three

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-54-

times with 1.0 ml of binding buffer and then lysed with 0.25 ml of 0.1 N NaOH. This lysate was transferred to a 12 x 75 mm polystyrene tube and placed in a gamma counter. Non-specific binding was determined by the addition of at least 100 fold excess unlabelled hCNTF. After the last wash the plates were autoradiographed.

#### 6.1.5. FLUORESCENCE ACTIVATED CELL-SORTING ANALYSIS

Transfected COS cells were incubated sequentially with CNTF/myc, 9E10 antibody, and FITC-labelled goat anti-mouse antibody. Then they were detached from dishes and subjected to FACS analysis. The results of transfections with a negative and positive plasmid are depicted in Figure 1D; COS cells transfected with a CNTF-receptor expressing plasmid contain a large subpopulation displaying greatly increased fluorescence by this assay.

#### 6.1.6. IODINATION OF hCNTF

10 µg hCNTF (560 µg/ml in 10 mM NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH7.4) was iodinated with 1 mCi <sup>125</sup>I Na using lactoperoxidase 6 ng/µl (Sigma) for 15 minutes at 20°C. After 15 minutes the reaction was quenched with an equal volume of buffer containing 0.1 M NaI, 0.1% BSA and 0.1% cytochrome C, 0.3% HOAc, 0.05% phenol red and 0.02% NaN<sub>3</sub>. Aliquots were removed for determination of TCA precipitable counts. The remainder was loaded onto a BioRad PD - 10 biogel column equilibrated with 0.05 M NaPO<sub>4</sub>, 0.1 M NaCl, 0.5 mg/ml protamine sulfate and 1 mg/ml BSA. Fractions were collected and TCA precipitable counts determined.

#### 6.1.7. SEQUENCING OF CNTFR

Sequencing was performed using a kit (U.S. Biochemical) for dideoxy double stranded DNA using Sequenase™, according to the manufacturer's instructions.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



-55-

6.1.8. INDIRECT  $^{125}\text{I}$  GOAT ANTI-MOUSE  
ANTIBODY BINDING ASSAY

COS cells were transfected with plasmid DNA from the library, the enriched library, or individual clones. After 48 hours, cells were incubated sequentially for 30 minutes  
5 on ice with PBS (with Ca, Mg)/5% FBS containing:

- 1) 1  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  CNTF-myc
- 2) 10  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  9E10;
- 3)  $^{125}\text{I}$  goat anti-mouse antibody (GaM) (0.5-1  
10  $\mu\text{Ci/ml}$ ).

Cells were washed 3 x 5 minutes in PBS/5% FBS after each step. After the last wash, the plates were autoradiographed.

For the individual clones, a quantitative estimate of total radioactivity bound was made with a hand-held gamma  
15 counter.

6.2. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

6.2.1. RESTRICTION ANALYSIS

On restriction analysis, the 14 positive clones fell  
20 into four classes:

- a) I2=I7 (2kb)
- b) I1=I5=I6 (2kb)
- c) I4=I8=I9=I11=I14=I15 (4kb)
- d) I10=I12=I13 (1.6kb)
- 25 (I3 was negative))

Members of each class produced an identical pattern of bands on digestion with the enzyme PstI. Further restriction analysis revealed that the four classes of clones overlapped, and preliminary sequence data confirmed  
30 that they shared overlapping sequences at their 5' ends. Curiously, class (b) proved to have its insert in the wrong orientation in the vector with respect to the eukaryotic promoter element. As can be seen from Table I, these clones were low expressors relative to the other clones.  
35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-56-

Transcription in these clones may arise from a weak cryptic promoter in the region downstream of the vector's polylinker.

#### 6.2.2. IN VITRO TRANSCRIPTION AND TRANSLATION

5 To characterize the proteins coded for by the four classes of clones, they were all transcribed from the T7 promoter in the 5' region of the vector polylinker. After in vitro translation, the products were electrophoresed on a polyacrylamide gel. Class (a) produced no protein, since  
10 it is in the wrong orientation with respect to the T7 promoter. The other three classes all produced proteins of identical sizes (approximately 42 kd), verifying that they encoded the same protein.

15 TABLE I.

Quantitation of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -GaM binding in CNTFR clones.

	Clone	CPM bound
20	I1	2000
	I2	8500
	I3	600
	I4	9000
	I5	2000
	I6	1600
25	I7	6000
	I8	7500
	I9	7000
	I10	4500
	I11	7000
	I12	5000
	I13	8000
30	I14	10000
	I15	8000
	Negative Control	500
	Background	250

35  
SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-57-

### 6.2.3. BINDING ANALYSIS WITH CNTF

The results of the indirect CNTF-myc binding assay using 9E10 anti-myc antibody and  $^{125}\text{I}$  goat anti-mouse antibody are shown in Figure 1B and 1C as well as in Table I. In Figure 1B, the plate on the left results from transfection of the unenriched library, while the plate on the right is from transfection of the enriched library plasmid DNA rescued after one round of panning (using approximately the same amount of DNA as for the unenriched library). Note the large number of dark spots seen only in the plate on the right, each representing a single COS cell expressing CNTF-myc binding site detected by radioautography.

For the individual positive clones discussed in Section 6.2.1, a quantitative estimate of total radioactivity was made with a hand-held gamma counter. The results of this assay for the individual clones I1-I15 are shown in Table I and demonstrate that 14 out of 15 clones express CNTF binding sites, as determined by indirect antibody binding assay. In addition, fragments of the plates from some of the individual clones were autoradiographed, as shown in Figure 1C.

A second demonstration of indirect binding utilized CNTF-myc followed by 9E10 antibody, FITC-labelled goat anti-mouse antibody, and FACS analysis, as shown in Figure 1D. COS cells transfected with positive clones demonstrated a 100-fold increase in expression of CNTFR as compared with cells transfected with negative clones.

The indirect binding data obtained using CNTF-myc was verified using direct  $^{125}\text{I}$ -CNTF binding, as shown in Table II. The receptor expressed on transfected COS cells specifically binds to iodinated CNTF as well as to the CNTF-myc ligand, as did the SH-SY5Y cells from which the CNTFR was cloned. Each transfected COS cell expresses about 30-fold more receptor per cell than SH-SY5Y cells.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-58-

TABLE II.  
Binding Analysis With Iodinated CNTF

5	Cpnc. <sup>125</sup> I-CNTF	<u>COS I2</u>		<u>SH-SY5Y</u>	
		Specific cpm bound	cpm/cell*	Specific cpm bound	cpm/cell
	2.16 nM	1412	$2.17 \times 10^{-2}$	1284	$4.28 \times 10^{-3}$

10

Monolayer binding assays were performed in 24 well culture plates using  $3 \times 10^5$  SH-SY5Y cells/well or  $6.5 \times 10^4$  COS cells/well. Specific cpm bound was calculated by subtracting cpm bound in the presence of 1000-fold excess of unlabelled CNTF from the cpm bound only in the presence of <sup>125</sup>I-CNTF at the concentration indicated. No specific binding was detected in untransfected COS cells.

15

\*COS cells were assayed 48 hours after transfection by DEAE Dextran in which typically only 20-40% of the cells are transfected. Assuming 20% COS cells are transfected, the specific cpm bound indicate that each transfected COS cell expresses about 30-fold more receptors per cell than SH-SY5Y cells.

20

#### 6.2.4. SEQUENCE OF CNTFR AND HOMLOGY TO OTHER GROWTH FACTOR RECEPTORS

25

The CNTFR contains motifs which are shared with a variety of other receptors. The extracellular portion of the CNTFR contains both an "immunoglobulin" domain at its N-terminus, as well as a "cytokine receptor" domain which is separated from the "immunoglobulin" (SEQ ID NOS: 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7) domain by a short hinge region. Although many receptors have homology to either the "immunoglobulin" or "cytokine receptor" (SEQ ID NOS: 2, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13) domains (Figure 3), only one receptor - the IL-6 receptor -

30

35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-59-

shares the same particular arrangement of these domains with the CNTFR (Figures 3 and 4). The IL-6 receptor is thus the protein most related to the CNTFR (Figure 4). Interestingly, the IL-6 receptor is also similar to the CNTFR in that it has a very short intracytoplasmic domain which is apparently not required for initiating responses upon IL-6 binding (Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). Recently, a novel signal transducer for the IL-6 receptor, termed gp 130, was molecularly cloned. This transducer does not bind IL-6 by itself, but it does confer high affinity binding to the IL-6 receptor and it is required to transduce the IL-6 signal (Hibi et al., 1990, Cell 63:1149-1157). Our cloning of the CNTFR reveals that it shares important features with the IL-6 receptor that are not found in other known receptors, thus defining a new family of receptors. The similarities between IL-6R and CNTFR suggest that CNTFR is likely to utilize the same signal transducer as the IL-6 receptor, or a related molecule. Finally, the identification of CNTFR-related receptors should aid in the identification of novel ligands that would bind to these receptors.

## 7. EXAMPLE: TISSUE LOCALIZATION OF MESSAGE FOR CNTFR

### 7.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

#### 7.1.1. CNTFR PROBE PREPARATION

Molecular cloning of the coding region for hCNTFR into the pCMX expression vector is described in U. S. patent application entitled "Mammalian Expression Vector" filed concurrently herewith, and the resulting expression vector is depicted in Figure 6. A PCR probe extending from base 889 to base 1230 of the CNTFR sequences was synthesized and used as a probe for Northern analysis.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-60-

### 7.1.2. RNA PREPARATION AND NORTHERN BLOTS

Selected tissues were dissected from Sprague-Dawley rats and immediately frozen in liquid nitrogen. RNAs were isolated by homogenization of tissues in 3 M LiCl, 6 M urea, as described in Bothwell et al. 1990 (Methods of Cloning and Analysis of Eukaryotic Genes, Boston, MS, Jones and Bartlett). RNAs (10 µg) were fractionated by electrophoresis through quadruplicate 1% agarose-formaldehyde gels (Bothwell et al., 1990, Methods of Cloning and Analysis of Eukaryotic Genes, Boston, MS, Jones and Bartlett) followed by capillary transfer to nylon membranes (MagnaGraph, Micron Separations Inc.) with 10xSSC (pH 7). RNAs were UV-cross-linked to the membranes by exposure to ultraviolet light (Stratalinker, Stratagen, Inc.) and hybridized at 68°C with radiolabeled probes in the presence of 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> (pH 7), 1% bovine serum albumin (fraction V, Sigma, Inc.) 7% SDS, 1 mM EDTA (Mahmoudi et al., 1989, Biotechniques 7:331-333), 100 µg/ml sonicated, denatured salmon sperm DNA. Filters were washed at 68°C with 3xSSC, 0.1% SDS and subjected to autoradiography for 1 day to 2 weeks with one or two intensifying screens (Cronex, DuPont) and X-ray film (SAR-5, Kodak) at 70°C. Ethidium bromide staining of the gels demonstrated that equivalent levels of total RNA were being assayed for the different samples (as in Maisonpierre et al., 1990, Science 247:1446-1451).

### 7.2. RESULTS

As shown in Figure 5, CNTFR mRNA was detectable in tissues of the central nervous system at low levels in sciatic nerve and adrenals, and in muscle. This would indicate that CNTF possesses not only neurotrophic activity, but myotrophic activity as well, and may explain the involvement of both the central nervous system and muscle in certain disorders, such as Duchennes muscular

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-61-

dystrophy and congenital myotonic dystrophy, in which patients may suffer from mental retardation. Expression of CNTFR in muscle suggests CNTF may have a role in muscle physiology. Thus, in addition to action on neurons, CNTF may have important action in muscle such as functioning as a myotrophic agent, or otherwise effect muscle development and/or differentiation.

8. EXAMPLE: EVIDENCE THAT THE CNTF RECEPTOR IS LINKED TO THE CELL SURFACE VIA A GLYCOSYL-PHOSPHATIDYLINOSITOL (GPI) LINKAGE

8.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

SH-SY5Y cells were cultured in a 24-well plate (Falcon) in RPMI supplemented with 10% inactivated fetal bovine serum. For experiments in which phospholipase (and control) treatments were done prior to CNTF-binding, the media was aspirated, cells were rinsed twice in PBS(+Ca/Mg), and then incubated with PBS(+Ca/Mg) supplemented with or without phosphatidylinositol-specific phospholipase (PI-PLC) at final concentration of 500 mU/ml (purchased from Boehringer Mannheim, catalogue # 1143-069) for 45 minutes at 37°C. Cells were then washed three times with binding buffer (PBS(+Ca/Mg) and 5% fetal bovine serum) and then incubated with 250 microliters binding buffer containing iodinated CNTF (approximately 100 picomolar) with or without a thousand-fold excess of unlabelled CNTF for 30 minutes at room temperature. For experiments in which the iodinated CNTF was bound prior to PI-PLC treatment, cells were first incubated in binding buffer containing iodinated CNTF with or without excess unlabelled CNTF at 37°C for 45 minutes. Cells were then washed two times with PBS(+Ca/Mg) and then incubated for 45 minutes with PBS(+Ca/Mg) supplemented with or without PI-PLC (final concentration 500 mU/ml). Cells were then rinsed three times with binding buffer. In all cases cells were

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-62-

solubilized prior to counting in 0.1N NaOH, and then counted.

## 8.2. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

5       The sequence of the CNTF receptor revealed that the encoded protein ended within a hydrophobic region that followed the extra-cytoplasmic domains, without any apparent stop transfer sequence or intra-cytoplasmic domain. This structure seemed reminiscent of the C-  
10       terminals found on membrane proteins which lack transmembrane domains and are attached to the cell surface via GPI-linkages (Ferguson and Williams, 1988). Thus, experiments were performed to test whether the CNTF receptor was linked to the cell surface via a GPI-linkage. As shown in Table III, treatment of SH-SY5Y cells with PI-  
15       PLC completely eliminated the ability of SH-SY5Y cells to subsequently bind CNTF, consistent with the notion that the CNTF receptor is linked to the cell surface via a GPI-linkage. However, CNTF already bound to SH-SY5Y cells cannot be released by PI-PLC treatment (Table III).  
20       Interestingly, a soluble form of the IL-6 receptor can tightly associate with a second membrane protein (GP130) required for IL-6 signal transduction. Thus, prevention of CNTF receptor release by prior binding to CNTF may be due to an association between the CNTF, its receptor, and its  
25       signal transducer (GP130 or a GP130 analog). Alternatively, CNTF-binding may alter the structure of the CNTF receptor, making it less susceptible to PI-PLC (several GPI-linked proteins have PI-PLC resistant forms).  
30       The finding that the CNTF receptor is attached to the cell surface via a GPI-linkage has important ramifications. It represents the first known growth factor receptor to be linked to the membrane in this fashion, raising the possibility that additional receptors may be GPI-linked.  
35       Because several proteins have both GPI-linked forms as well

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



-63-

as forms that contain conventional transmembrane domains, our findings raise the possibility that the CNTF receptor has an alternative C-terminus that could encode a transmembrane domain, and similarly that the IL-6 receptor has a GPI-linked form. The GPI-linked forms of growth factor receptors may be able to utilize novel mechanisms of receptor regulation and release. For example, down-regulation of surface receptors could rapidly occur by releasing the GPI-linked receptors by activating extra-cytoplasmic phospholipase activities. These released receptors might also act on other cells, either alone or when bound to CNTF in much the same way that soluble IL-6 receptor has been shown to bind IL-6 and activate cells expressing GP130.

The possibility that release of CNTF receptors using PI-PLC could block CNTF action may have important implications. It could be used to verify that observed effects of CNTF are due to the cloned CNTF receptor. Therapeutically, PI-PLC could be used to release CNTF receptors and possibly block CNTF action in cases where CNTF activity is thought to be detrimental.

If the CNTF-blockable PI-PLC release of the CNTF receptor is due to the formation of a tertiary complex between the CNTF, its receptor, and the potential signal transducing protein, then this feature of the receptor could be used to define and molecularly clone the transducing molecule.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-64-

TABLE III

Analysis Of PI-PLC Treatment  
On CNTF Binding To SH-SY5Y Cells

		CPM Bound	
		<u>No Cold Excess</u>	<u>Cold Excess</u>
<u>Pre-Treat with PI-PLC</u>			
10	No PI-PLC	1440	370
	With PI-PLC	420	310
<u>Bind CNTF Before PI-PLC</u>			
	No PI-PLC	1250	310
15	With PI-PLC	1060	300

#### 9. THE EFFECTS OF CNTF ON DENERVATED RAT SKELETAL MUSCLE IN VIVO

20 The goal of the experiments described herein was to  
examine the effects of purified recombinant CNTF on  
denervated skeletal muscle in vivo and to determine whether  
CNTF could prevent some of the phenotypic changes  
associated with denervation atrophy such as muscle weight  
25 and myofibrillar protein loss. We found that the CNTF  
receptor is expressed in skeletal muscle on both myotubes  
and myoblasts, and that CNTF prevents the loss of both  
muscle weight and myofibril protein content associated with  
denervation atrophy.

30

##### 9.1. THE CNTF RECEPTOR IS EXPRESSED IN SKELETAL MUSCLE ON BOTH MYOTUBES AND MYOBLASTS

Northern blot analysis was performed on RNA samples  
derived from a variety of rat tissues in order to identify  
35 the primary cellular targets of CNTF as shown in Figure 5.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-65-

A probe derived from the human CNTF receptor coding region identified a 2 kb transcript whose expression was generally restricted to the central nervous system, except for surprisingly high levels found in skeletal muscle and low levels in adrenal gland and sciatic nerve.

5 A more detailed analysis of the CNTF receptor expression specifically in skeletal muscle was carried out as described supra by Northern blotting using mRNA prepared from specific rat muscle types, purified human muscle  
10 myotubes, and several skeletal muscle cell lines of both mouse and rat origin (Figure 7). Using a human probe for the CNTF receptor, two mRNA species (2.0 and 1.7 kb) were detected in several muscle RNA samples. Figure 7  
15 demonstrates that the CNTF receptor is expressed in both myotube and myoblast muscle cell lines of either mouse (lanes 1 and 2) or rat (lanes 3 and 4) origin, as well as in both red slow-twitch soleus muscle and white fast-twitch extensor digitorum longus (EDL) muscle of the rat (lanes 5 and 6, respectively). It appeared that the level of CNTF  
20 receptor mRNA was increased in both soleus (lane 12) and EDL muscle (lane 14) that were first denervated for 72 hours relative to their sham-operated contralateral controls (lanes 11 and 13 respectively). Interestingly, the highest level of expression was observed in RNA samples  
25 from myotubes derived from human fetal skeletal muscle. These myotubes were cultured and then purified away from fibroblasts and other non-muscle cells by fluorescence-activated cell sorting prior to RNA isolation (lane 8). We noted that two distinct CNTF receptor mRNA species were  
30 identified on the muscle cell Northern blot and that the 1.7 kb CNTF receptor message was preferentially expressed in the myoblast cell line C2C12 mb (lane 1) and may represent an alternatively spliced form of the receptor.

35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-66-

9.2. CNTF PREVENTS THE LOSS OF BOTH MUSCLE WEIGHT  
AND MYOFIBRILLAR PROTEIN CONTENT ASSOCIATED  
WITH DENERVATION ATROPHY

9.2.1. DENERVATION SURGERY

The various animal groups used for these studies are  
described in Table IV, infra. Generally, three animals  
comprised a single group. For all experimental groups, an  
initial incision of approximately 20 cm was made through  
the skin of the right hindlimb at midhigh level.  
Following this surgical procedure, the 20 cm cut was also  
performed on the left hindlimb at midhigh in order to  
carry out the sham-operation.

In animal groups 2-6, the soleus muscle of the right  
hindlimb was denervated by surgically removing a 2-5 mm  
segment of the right sciatic nerve at midhigh level to  
leave a distal nerve stump of 32 to 35 mm (labeled as A in  
Figure 8). The left soleus muscle served as the control in  
that a sham-operation was performed on this muscle by  
gently pulling on the sciatic nerve 32 to 35 mm from its  
point of innervation of the soleus muscle. All surgeries  
were carried out while the animals were under light  
chloro-pentobarbital anesthesia (0.3 g/kg). Animal group 1  
(controls) did not receive any denervation and were not  
injected. All animals weighed between 100 and 150 grams.

9.2.2. TREATMENTS

Animals in groups 1 and 2 were not treated. Animals  
in group 3 were injected daily for a total of 4 days  
intramuscular (IM) with phosphate-buffered saline (PBS)  
containing 1 mg/ml of BSA (PBS/BSA). Multiple injections  
were made into the muscles of the midhigh on both sides of  
the animals. Animals in group 4 were injected daily for 4  
days IM with recombinant rat CNTF (1 mg/kg) containing 1  
mg/ml of BSA (CNTF/BSA). Multiple injections were made on  
both sides of the animal as described above. Animals in

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

GGAGGAGGAG GACATTGATG TGCTTGGTGT GTGGCCAGTG GTGAAGAG ATG GCT GCT	297
Met Ala Ala	
1	
CCT GTC CCG TGG GCC TGC TGT GCT GTG CTT GCC GCC GCC GCC GCA GTT	345
Pro Val Pro Trp Ala Cys Cys Ala Val Leu Ala Ala Ala Ala Val	
5 10 15	
GTC TAC GCC CAG AGA CAC AGT CCA CAG GAG GCA CCC CAT GTG CAG TAC	393
Val Tyr Ala Gln Arg His Ser Pro Gln Glu Ala Pro His Val Gln Tyr	
20 25 30 35	
GAG CGC CTG GGC TCT GAC GTG ACA CTG CCA TGT GGG ACA GCA AAC TGG	441
Glu Arg Leu Gly Ser Asp Val Thr Leu Pro Cys Gly Thr Ala Asn Trp	
40 45 50	
GAT GCT GCG GTG ACG TGG CGG GTA AAT GGG ACA GAC CTG GCC CCT GAC	489
Asp Ala Ala Val Thr Trp Arg Val Asn Gly Thr Asp Leu Ala Pro Asp	
55 60 65	
CTG CTC AAC GGC TCT CAG CTG GTG CTC CAT GGC CTG GAA CTG GGC CAC	537
Leu Leu Asn Gly Ser Gln Leu Val Leu His Gly Leu Glu Leu Gly His	
70 75 80	
AGT GGC CTC TAC GCC TGC TTC CAC CGT GAC TCC TGG CAC CTG CGC CAC	585
Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ala Cys Phe His Arg Asp Ser Trp His Leu Arg His	
85 90 95	
CAA GTC CTG CTG CAT GTG GGC TTG CCG CCG CGG GAG CCT GTG CTC AGC	633
Gln Val Leu Leu His Val Gly Leu Pro Pro Arg Glu Pro Val Leu Ser	
100 105 110 115	
TGC CGC TCC AAC ACT TAC CCC AAG GGC TTC TAC TGC AGC TGG CAT CTG	681
Cys Arg Ser Asn Thr Tyr Pro Lys Gly Phe Tyr Cys Ser Trp His Leu	
120 125 130	
CCC ACC CCC ACC TAC ATT CCC AAC ACC TTC AAT GTG ACT GTG CTG CAT	729
Pro Thr Pro Thr Tyr Ile Pro Asn Thr Phe Asn Val Thr Val Leu His	
135 140 145	
GGC TCC AAA ATT ATG GTC TGT GAG AAG GAC CCA GCC CTC AAG AAC CGC	777
Gly Ser Lys Ile Met Val Cys Glu Lys Asp Pro Ala Leu Lys Asn Arg	
150 155 160	
TGC CAC ATT CGC TAC ATG CAC CTG TTC TCC ACC ATC AAG TAC AAG GTC	825
Cys His Ile Arg Tyr Met His Leu Phe Ser Thr Ile Lys Tyr Lys Val	
165 170 175	
TCC ATA AGT GTC AGC AAT GCC CTG GGC CAC AAT GCC ACA GCT ATC ACC	873
Ser Ile Ser Val Ser Asn Ala Leu Gly His Asn Ala Thr Ala Ile Thr	
180 185 190 195	
TTT GAC GAG TTC ACC ATT GTG AAG CCT GAT CCT CCA GAA AAT GTG GTA	921
Phe Asp Glu Phe Thr Ile Val Lys Pro Asp Pro Pro Glu Asn Val Val	
200 205 210	
GCC CGG CCA GTG CCC AGC AAC CCT CGC CGG CTG GAG GTG ACG TGG CAG	969
Ala Arg Pro Val Pro Ser Asn Pro Arg Arg Leu Glu Val Thr Trp Gln	
215 220 225	
ACC CCC TCG ACC TGG CCT GAC CCT GAG TCT TTT CCT CTC AAG TTC TTT	1017
Thr Pro Ser Thr Trp Pro Asp Pro Glu Ser Phe Pro Leu Lys Phe Phe	
230 235 240	
CTG CGC TAC CGA CCC CTC ATC CTG GAC CAG TGG CAG CAT GTG GAG CTG	1065
Leu Arg Tyr Arg Pro Leu Ile Leu Asp Gln Trp Gln His Val Glu Leu	
245 250 255	
TCC GAC GGC ACA GCA CAC ACC ATC ACA GAT GCC TAC GCC GGG AAG GAG	1113
Ser Asp Gly Thr Ala His Thr Ile Thr Asp Ala Tyr Ala Gly Lys Glu	

- 74 -

260	265	270	275	
TAC ATT ATC CAG GTG GCA GCC AAG GAC AAT GAG ATT GGG ACA TGG AGT				1161
Tyr Ile Ile Gln Val Ala Ala Lys Asp Asn Glu Ile Gly Thr Trp Ser	280	285	290	
GAC TGG AGC GTA GCC GCC CAC GCT ACG CCC TGG ACT GAG GAA CCG CGA				1209
Asp Trp Ser Val Ala Ala His Ala Thr Pro Trp Thr Glu Glu Pro Arg	295	300	305	
CAC CTC ACC ACG GAG GCC CAG GCT GCG GAG ACC ACG ACC AGC ACC ACC				1257
His Leu Thr Thr Glu Ala Gln Ala Ala Glu Thr Thr Thr Ser Thr Thr	310	315	320	
AGC TCC CTG GCA CCC CCA CCT ACC ACG AAG ATC TGT GAC CCT GGG GAG				1305
Ser Ser Leu Ala Pro Pro Thr Thr Lys Ile Cys Asp Pro Gly Glu	325	330	335	
CTG GGC AGC GGC GGG GGA CCC TGC GCA CCC TTC TTG GTC AGC GTC CCC				1353
Leu Gly Ser Gly Gly Gly Pro Cys Ala Pro Phe Leu Val Ser Val Pro	340	345	350	355
ATC ACT CTG GCC CTG GCT GCC GCT GCC GCC ACT GCC AGC AGT CTC TTG				1401
Ile Thr Leu Ala Leu Ala Ala Ala Ala Thr Ala Ser Ser Leu Leu	360	365	370	
ATC TGAGCCCGGC ACCCCATGAG GACATGCAGA GCACCTGCAG AGGAGCAGGA				1454
Ile				
GGCCGGAGCT GAGCCTGCAG ACCCCGGTTT CTATTTTGCA CACGGGCAGG AGGACCTTTT				1514
GCATTCTCTT CAGACACAAT TTGTGGAGAC CCCGGCGGGC CCGGGCCTGC CGCCCCCAG				1574
CCCTGCCGCA CCAAGCT				1591

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 372 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

Met	Ala	Ala	Pro	Val	Pro	Trp	Ala	Cys	Cys	Ala	Val	Leu	Ala	Ala	Ala
1				5					10					15	
Ala	Ala	Val	Val	Tyr	Ala	Gln	Arg	His	Ser	Pro	Gln	Glu	Ala	Pro	His
		20					25						30		
Val	Gln	Tyr	Glu	Arg	Leu	Gly	Ser	Asp	Val	Thr	Leu	Pro	Cys	Gly	Thr
	35					40						45			
Ala	Asn	Trp	Asp	Ala	Ala	Val	Thr	Trp	Arg	Val	Asn	Gly	Thr	Asp	Leu
	50					55					60				
Ala	Pro	Asp	Leu	Leu	Asn	Gly	Ser	Gln	Leu	Val	Leu	His	Gly	Leu	Glu
	65				70				75					80	
Leu	Gly	His	Ser	Gly	Leu	Tyr	Ala	Cys	Phe	His	Arg	Asp	Ser	Trp	His
		85						90						95	
Leu	Arg	His	Gln	Val	Leu	Leu	His	Val	Gly	Leu	Pro	Pro	Arg	Glu	Pro
	100							105						110	
Val	Leu	Ser	Cys	Arg	Ser	Asn	Thr	Tyr	Pro	Lys	Gly	Phe	Tyr	Cys	Ser

- 75 -

115	120	125
Trp His Leu Pro Thr Pro Thr Tyr Ile Pro Asn Thr Phe Asn Val Thr		
130	135	140
Val Leu His Gly Ser Lys Ile Met Val Cys Glu Lys Asp Pro Ala Leu		
145	150	155
Lys Asn Arg Cys His Ile Arg Tyr Met His Leu Phe Ser Thr Ile Lys		
	165	170
Tyr Lys Val Ser Ile Ser Val Ser Asn Ala Leu Gly His Asn Ala Thr		
	180	185
Ala Ile Thr Phe Asp Glu Phe Thr Ile Val Lys Pro Asp Pro Pro Glu		
	195	200
Asn Val Val Ala Arg Pro Val Pro Ser Asn Pro Arg Arg Leu Glu Val		
	210	215
Thr Trp Gln Thr Pro Ser Thr Trp Pro Asp Pro Glu Ser Phe Pro Leu		
	225	230
Lys Phe Phe Leu Arg Tyr Arg Pro Leu Ile Leu Asp Gln Trp Gln His		
	245	250
Val Glu Leu Ser Asp Gly Thr Ala His Thr Ile Thr Asp Ala Tyr Ala		
	260	265
Gly Lys Glu Tyr Ile Ile Gln Val Ala Ala Lys Asp Asn Glu Ile Gly		
	275	280
Thr Trp Ser Asp Trp Ser Val Ala Ala His Ala Thr Pro Trp Thr Glu		
	290	295
Glu Pro Arg His Leu Thr Thr Glu Ala Gln Ala Ala Glu Thr Thr Thr		
	305	310
Ser Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ala Pro Pro Pro Thr Thr Lys Ile Cys Asp		
	325	330
Pro Gly Glu Leu Gly Ser Gly Gly Gly Pro Cys Ala Pro Phe Leu Val		
	340	345
Ser Val Pro Ile Thr Leu Ala Leu Ala Ala Ala Ala Ala Thr Ala Ser		
	355	360
Ser Leu Leu Ile		
370		

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
- (A) LENGTH: 55 amino acids
  - (B) TYPE: amino acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

Val Thr Leu Thr Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Val	
1 5 10 15	
His Trp Val Leu Arg Lys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa	
20 25 30	

- 76 -

Ser Gly Asn Tyr Ser Cys Tyr  
50 55

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 46 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

Ala Lys Ile Thr Pro Asn Asn Asn Gly Thr Tyr Ala Cys Phe  
35 40 45

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 62 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

Pro Thr Ala Glu Leu Ser Asp Ser Gly Thr Tyr Thr Cys Asn  
50 55 60

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 60 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

BNSDOCID: <WO 9119009A1.1A>



- 77 -

```

1             5             10             15
Ser Leu Arg His Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
20             25             30
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Thr Leu Asn Leu Asp His
35             40             45
Val Ser Phe Gln Asp Ala Gly Asn Tyr Ser Cys Thr
50             55             60

```

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 54 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:

```

Val Thr Leu Thr Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Phe Gln Leu
1             5             10             15
Arg Arg Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
20             25             30
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Phe Phe His Leu Asn Ala Val Ala Leu Gly Asp Gly
35             40             45
Gly His Tyr Thr Cys Arg
50

```

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:8:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 188 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:8:

```

Cys Phe Arg Lys Ser Pro Leu Ser Asn Val Val Cys Glu Trp Xaa Xaa
1             5             10             15
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
20             25             30
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa
35             40             45
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
50             55             60
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
65             70             75             80
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Phe Gln Gly Cys Gly Ile Leu Gln
85             90             95
Pro Asp Pro Pro Ala Asn Ile Thr Val Thr Ala Val Ala Arg Asn Pro

```

- 78 -

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:9:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 185 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:9:

Cys 1	Arg	Ser	Pro	Asp 5	Lys	Glu	Thr	Phe	Thr 10	Cys	Trp	Trp	Xaa	Xaa 15	Xaa
Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 20	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 25	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 30	Xaa	Xaa
Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 35	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Cys 40	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 45	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa
Xaa	Xaa 50	Cys	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 55	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 60	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa
Xaa 65	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 70	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 75	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 80
Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Val 85	Asp	Val	Thr	Tyr	Ile 90	Val	Glu	Pro	Glu	Pro 95	Pro
Arg	Asn	Leu	Thr 100	Leu	Glu	Val	Lys	Gln 105	Leu	Lys	Asp	Lys	Lys 110	Thr	Tyr
Leu	Trp	Xaa 115	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 120	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 125	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa
Xaa	Xaa 130	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 135	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 140	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa
Xaa 145	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 150	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 155	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 160
Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa 165	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Xaa	Val 170	Gln	Thr	Arg	Cys	Lys 175	Pro
Asp	His	Gly	Tyr 180	Trp	Ser	Arg	Trp	Ser 185							

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:10:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- 79 -

- (A) LENGTH: 185 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:10:

```

Cys Phe Thr Gln Arg Leu Glu Asp Leu Val Cys Phe Trp Xaa Xaa Xaa
1      5      10      15
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
20      25      30
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
35      40      45
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
50      55      60
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
65      70      75      80
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Ile His Ile Asn Glu Val Val Leu Leu Asp Ala Pro
85      90      95
Ala Gly Leu Leu Ala Arg Arg Ala Glu Glu Gly Ser His Val Val Leu
100      105      110
Arg Trp Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
115      120      125
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
130      135      140
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
145      150      155      160
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Val Arg Ala Arg Met Ala Glu Pro Ser
165      170      175
Phe Ser Gly Phe Trp Ser Ala Trp Ser
180      185

```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:11:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 189 amino acids
  - (B) TYPE: amino acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:11:

```

Cys Phe Tyr Asn Ser Arg Ala Asn Ile Ser Cys Val Trp Xaa Xaa Xaa
1      5      10      15
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
20      25      30
Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
35      40      45

```

- 80 -

```

Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
50                               55                               60

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
65                               70                               75                               80

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Phe Lys Pro Phe Glu Asn Leu Arg
85                               90                               95

Leu Met Ala Pro Ile Ser Leu Gln Val Val His Val Glu Thr His Arg
100                               105                               110

Cys Asn Ile Ser Trp Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
115                               120                               125

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
130                               135                               140

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
145                               150                               155                               160

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Val Arg Val Lys
165                               170                               175

Pro Leu Gln Gly Glu Phe Thr Thr Trp Ser Pro Trp Ser
180                               185

```

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:12:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 184 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:12:

```

Cys Phe Ser Asp Tyr Ile Arg Thr Ser Thr Cys Glu Trp Xaa Xaa Xaa
1      5      10      15

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
20      25      30

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
35      40      45

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
50      55      60

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
65      70      75      80

Xaa Xaa Phe Ser Pro Ser Gly Asn Val Lys Pro Leu Ala Pro Asp Asn
85      90      95

Leu Thr Leu His Thr Asn Val Ser Asp Glu Trp Leu Leu Thr Trp Xaa
100     105     110

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
115     120     125

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
130     135     140

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa
145     150     155     160

```

- 81 -

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Val Arg Val Arg Ser Gln Ile Leu  
                                   165                                  170                                  175

Thr Gly Thr Trp Ser Glu Trp Ser  
                                   180

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:13:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 185 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:13:

Cys Phe Ile Tyr Asn Ala Asp Leu Met Asn Cys Thr Trp Xaa Xaa Xaa  
 1                                  5                                  10                                  15

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa  
                                   20                                  25                                  30

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa  
                                   35                                  40                                  45

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Cys Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa  
                                   50                                  55                                  60

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa  
                                   65                                  70                                  75                                  80

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Leu Asp Thr Lys Lys Ile Glu Arg Phe Asn Pro Pro  
                                   85                                  90                                  95

Ser Asn Val Thr Val Arg Cys Asn Thr Thr His Cys Leu Val Arg Trp  
                                   100                                  105                                  110

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa  
                                   115                                  120                                  125

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa  
                                   130                                  135                                  140

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa  
                                   145                                  150                                  155                                  160

Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Xaa Val Lys Ile Arg Ala Ala Asp Val  
                                   165                                  170                                  175

Arg Ile Leu Asn Trp Ser Ser Trp Ser  
                                   180                                  185

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:14:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 34 base pairs  
 (B) TYPE: nucleic acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:14:

- 82 -

GACTCGAGTC GACATCGGAG GCTGATGGGA TGCC

34

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:15:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 34 base pairs
  - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: unknown

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:15:

CTAAAGACTC CTCCTAGACA TCGCCGGCGT ATCG

34

-83-

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A substantially pure nucleic acid molecule encoding a CNTF receptor.
- 5 2. The nucleic acid molecule of claim 1 having a nucleic acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1) or a fragment thereof that is at least six nucleotides in length.
- 10 3. The nucleic acid molecule of claim 2 which is a cDNA.
- 15 4. A substantially pure nucleic acid molecule comprising at least a six nucleotide portion of the nucleic acid sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1).
- 20 5. A substantially pure nucleic acid molecule comprising at least a six nucleotide portion of the nucleic acid sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1) but carrying a mutation.
- 25 6. A substantially pure second nucleic acid molecule comprising a hybridizable portion of a first nucleic acid molecule which has a sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1).
- 30 7. A substantially pure nucleic acid molecule which encodes a protein having the amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2), or a portion thereof consisting of at least six amino acids or a derivative thereof.
- 35 8. An organism containing the nucleic acid molecule of claim 1, 2, or 7.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-84-

9. The organism of claim 8 which is a microorganism.

10. The microorganism of claim 9 which is a bacterium.

11. The microorganism of claim 9 which is a yeast.

12. The organism of claim 8 which is a transgenic animal.

13. A cell containing the nucleic acid molecule of claim 1, 2, or 7.

14. An immortalized cell line containing the nucleic acid of claim 1, 2, or 7.

15. The nucleic acid molecule of claim 1, 2, or 7 which further comprises a nucleic acid sequence capable of controlling gene expression.

16. A substantially pure CNTF receptor molecule comprising the amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2), or a portion consisting of at least six amino acids thereof.

17. A monoclonal antibody which recognizes the CNTFR of claim 16.

18. A method for identifying a cell which binds to CNTF comprising detecting the expression of CNTF receptor by the cell.

19. The method of claim 18 further comprising detecting the presence of CNTF receptor-encoding RNA by

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



-85-

hybridizing a sample from the cell suspected of containing CNTF-receptor encoding RNA to a nucleic acid probe, which probe comprises at least a six nucleotide portion of the sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1).

5

20. The method of claim 18 further comprising detecting the presence of CNTF receptor protein by (i) exposing the cell to anti-CNTF receptor antibody under conditions which would permit immunospecific binding to occur and then (ii) detecting the binding of antibody to the cell.

10

21. An assay system for the screening of pharmaceutical compounds for CNTF activity comprising cells which contain a recombinant nucleic acid molecule that comprises a nucleic acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1) or a fragment thereof that is at least six nucleotides in length.

15

20

22. An assay system for the screening of pharmaceutical compounds for CNTF activity comprising cells which express recombinant CNTF receptor protein or a functionally active portion thereof.

25

23. The assay system of claim 22 in which the recombinant CNTF receptor protein comprises an amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) or a fragment thereof that is at least six amino acids in length.

30

24. An experimental model system for studying the physiology of CNTF comprising cells which contain recombinant nucleic acid encoding a CNTF receptor and which express, on their surface, an increased number of CNTF receptors relative to the same type of cells which do

35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-86-

not contain recombinant nucleic acid encoding a CNTF receptor.

25. The experimental model system of claim 24 which is a transgenic animal.

5

26. A non-human transgenic animal that carries a transgene that encodes a recombinant CNTF receptor that is not associated with a cell surface.

10

27. A non-human transgenic animal that carries a transgene that encodes a recombinant CNTF receptor that is ineffective in transducing a biological response to CNTF.

15

28. A method of diagnosing a CNTF-related disorder in a patient comprising detecting a difference in the amount of CNTF receptor in cells or tissue from the patient relative to the amount of CNTF receptor in comparable cells or tissue from a healthy person.

20

29. A method of diagnosing a CNTF-related disorder in a patient comprising detecting a difference in the amount of CNTF receptor or fragment thereof in fluid from the patient relative to the amount of CNTF receptor or fragment thereof in comparable fluid from a healthy person.

25

30. A method of diagnosing a CNTF-related disorder in a patient comprising detecting a difference in the amount of CNTF receptor RNA in a sample from the patient relative to the amount of CNTF receptor RNA in a comparable sample from a healthy person.

30

31. The method of claim 30 in which the amount of CNTF receptor RNA is measured by hybridizing a sample

35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-87-

containing nucleic acid to a nucleic acid probe which comprises at least a six nucleotide portion of the sequence depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:1).

5 32. The method of claim 30 in which the amount of CNTF receptor or fragment thereof is measured by (i) exposing the cells or tissue to anti-CNTF receptor antibody under conditions which allow immunospecific ~~binding to CNTF receptor~~ to occur and (ii) measuring the amount of antibody binding.

10 33. The method of claim 30 in which the amount of CNTF receptor is measured by (i) exposing the cells or tissue to tagged CNTF under conditions which allow binding to CNTF receptor to occur and (ii) measuring the amount of tagged CNTF.

15 34. A method of treating a patient suffering from a neurologic disorder comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of CNTF receptor protein, or a functionally active peptide fragment or derivative thereof.

20 35. The method of claim 34 in which the CNTF receptor protein, peptide fragment, or derivative is able to bind CNTF.

25 36. The method of claim 34 in which the CNTF receptor is administered to produce a local effect.

30 37. A method of treating a patient suffering from a neurologic disorder comprising administering to the patient a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence which encodes CNTF receptor or a functionally active portion thereof, such that the nucleotide sequence

35

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-88-

is expressed within the patient to produce a therapeutically effective amount of CNTF receptor or portion thereof.

5 38. The method of claim 34, 35 or 36 in which the neurologic disorder is trauma.

39. The method of claim 34 in which the neurologic disorder is a disorder of motorneurons.

10 40. The method of claim 39 in which the disorder is amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.

15 41. A pharmaceutical composition comprising CNTF receptor protein, peptide fragments, or derivatives thereof; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

20 42. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a protein having an amino acid sequence comprising an amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 2 (SEQ ID NO:2) or a six amino acid portion thereof; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

25 43. A method of identifying molecules related to the CNTF receptor which are members of the family of molecules which include the IL-6 receptor comprising:

- (i) screening a DNA library for clones which hybridize to portions of CNTF receptor-encoding nucleic acid;
- 30 (ii) isolating and propagating clones which hybridize to CNTF receptor encoding nucleic acid;
- (iii) determining the nucleic acid sequence of the clones isolated and propagated in step (ii);
- 35 and

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-89-

- (iv) comparing the nucleic acid sequences determined in step (iii) with the nucleic acid sequences of known members of the family.

5        44. A method of treating a patient suffering from a muscle cell disorder comprising administering to the patient a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence which encodes CNTF receptor or a functionally active portion thereof, such that the nucleotide sequence is expressed within the patient to produce a  
10        therapeutically effective amount of CNTF receptor or portion thereof.

15        45. A substantially pure molecule other than CNTF which competes with CNTF for binding to the CNTF receptor.

20        46. A model system for an autoimmune disease comprising an animal that has been immunized with an immunogenic amount of CNTF receptor.

20        47. A substantially pure second nucleic acid molecule complementary to the nucleic acid molecule of claim 1.

25        48. A substantially pure second nucleic acid molecule complementary to the nucleic acid molecule or fragment of claim 2.

30        49. A composition of substantially purified cells which express recombinant CNTF receptor protein or a functionally active portion thereof.

35        50. A method of treating a patient suffering from a neuromuscular or muscle disorder comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of CNTF protein or a functionally active portion or derivative thereof.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-90-

51. A method of treating a patient with a disorder of a type of tissue or cell comprising administering to the patient an effective amount of CNTF protein or a functionally active portion or derivative thereof, in which the type of tissue or cell in the patient or in a normal individual expresses a CNTF receptor protein.

52. The method of claim 50 in which the disorder involves muscle atrophy.

53. The method of claim 52 in which the atrophy results from a condition selected from the group consisting of denervation, chronic disuse, metabolic stress and nutritional insufficiency.

54. The method of claim 52 in which the atrophy results from a condition selected from the group consisting of muscular dystrophy syndrome, congenital myopathy, inflammatory disease of muscle, and toxic myopathy.

55. The method of claim 52 in which the atrophy results from a condition selected from the group consisting of nerve trauma, peripheral neuropathy, drug or toxin-induced damage, or motor neuronopathy.

56. A nucleic acid comprising a CNTF receptor nucleic acid sequence as contained in plasmid pCMX-hCNTFR, deposited with the NRRL and having accession number B-18789.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

1/14

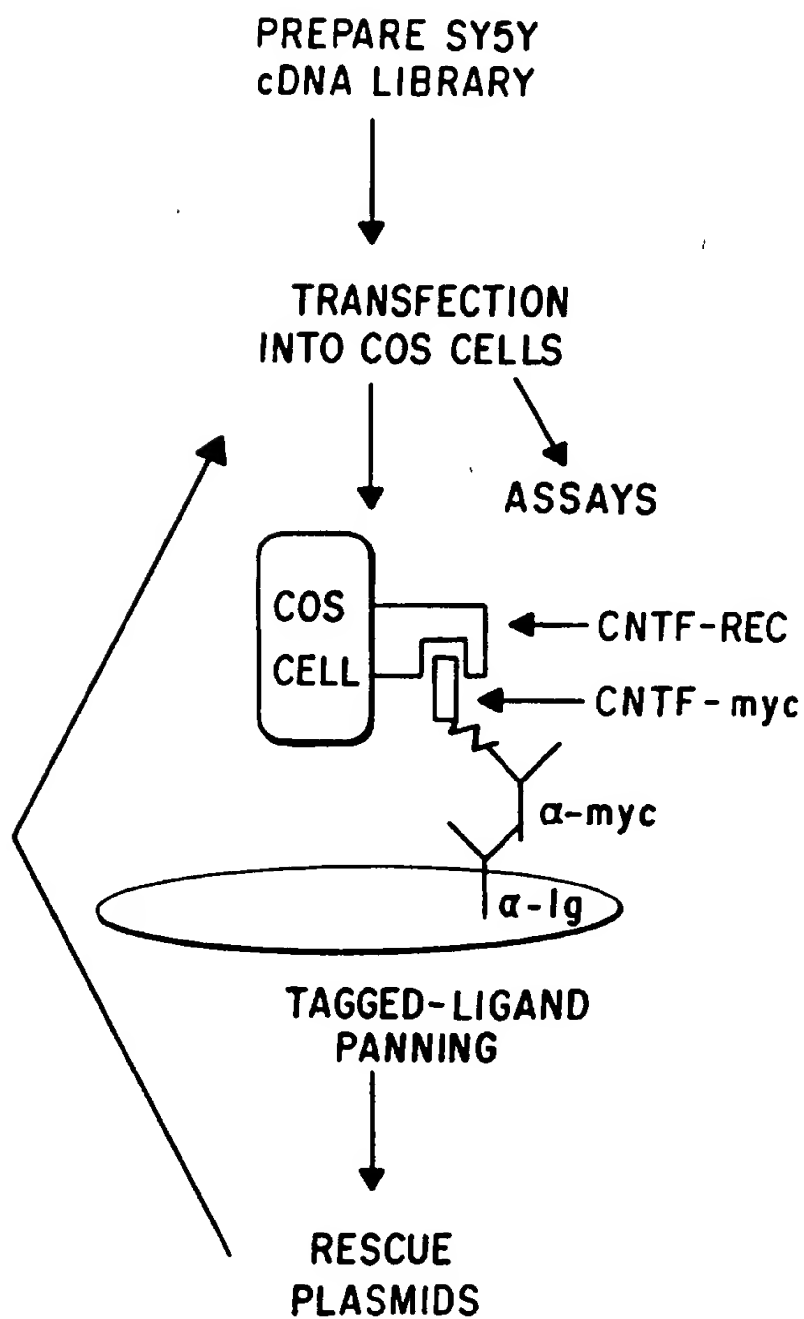


FIG. 1A

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

2/14

BEFORE PANNING

FIG. 1B (i)

AFTER TAGGED-  
LIGAND PANNING

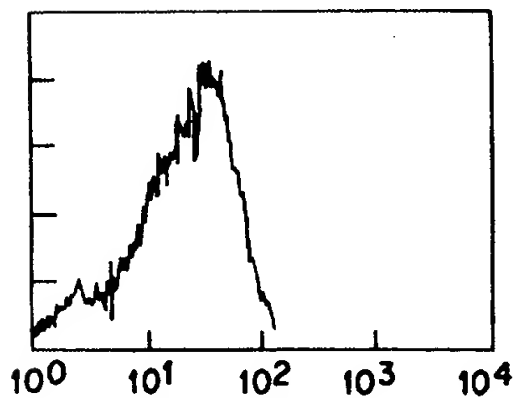
FIG. 1B (ii)

NEGATIVE  
CLONE

FIG. 1C(i)

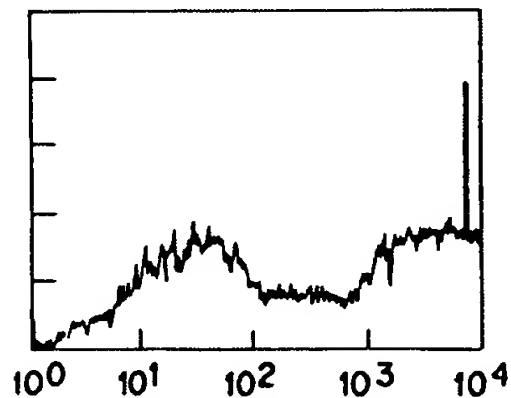
POSITIVE  
CLONE

FIG. 1C(ii)



NEGATIVE CLONE

FIG. 1D(i)



POSITIVE CLONE

FIG. 1D(ii)

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



3/14

```

10      20      30      40      50      60      70      80
CCTCGAGATC CATTGTGCTC AAAGGGCGGC GGCAGGGGAG GCGGGGGCTC CAGCCGGGCG GCGGCGAGGC TCGGCGGTGG
GGAGCTCTAG GTAAACAGGAG TTTCCCGCGC CCGTGGCTC CCGCGCGGAG GTGCGGCGCG CCGCGCTCCG AGCCGCCACC
90      100     110     120     130     140     150
GATCCGGCGG GCGGTGCTAG CTCGGGCTC CCTGGCTGCG TCGCTGCCGG GGGCGGTCCG AAGGCGCGGC
CTAGGCCGCC CGCCACGATC GAGGCGGAG GGACGGAGCG AGCGACGGCC CCGGCCAGCC TTCCGGCGCG

160     170     180     190     200     210     220     230
GGGAAGCCCG GGTGGCCCGA GGGGGGACT CTAGCCTTGT CACCTCATCT TGCCCCCTTG GTTTGGAG TCCTGAAGAG
CGCTTCGGGC CCACCGGGCT CCCGGGCTGA GATCGGAACA GTGGAGTAGA ACGGGGGAAC CAAACCTTC AGGACTTCTC
240     250     260     270     280     290     300
TTGGTCTGGA GGAGGAGGAG GACATTGATC TGCTTGGTGT GTGGCCAGTG GTGAAGAG ATG GCT GCT CCT GTC
AACCAGACCT CCTCCTCCTC CTGTAACCTAC ACGAACCA CAACGGTCA CACTTCTC TAC CGA CGA GGA CAG
Met Ala Ala Pro Val>

310     320     330     340     350     360
CCG TGG GCC TCG TGT GCT GTG CTT GCC GCC GCC GCA GTT GTC TAC GCC CAG AGA CAC AGT CCA
GGC ACC CGG ACG ACA CGA CAC GAA CCG CGG CGG CGT CAA CAG ATG CGG GTC TCT GTG TCA GGT
Pro Trp Ala Cys Cys Ala Val Leu Ala Ala Ala Ala Val Val Tyr Ala Gln Arg His Ser Pro
370     380     390     400     410     420     430
CAG GAG GCA CCC CAT GTG CAG TAC GAG CGC CTG GGC TCT GAC GTG ACA CTG CCA TGT GGG ACA
GTC CTC CGT GGG GTA CAC GTC ATG CTC GCG GAC CCG AGA CTG CAC TGT GAC GGT ACA CCC TGT
Gln Glu Ala Pro His Val Gln Tyr Glu Arg Leu Gly Ser Asp Val Thr Leu Pro Cys Gly Thr>

440     450     460     470     480     490
GCA AAC TGG GAT GCT GCG GTG ACG TGG CCG GTA AAT GGG ACA GAC CTG GCC CCT GAC CTG CTC AAC
CGT TTG ACC CTA CGA CGC CAC TGC ACC GCC CAT TTA CCC TGT TGT GAC CCG GGA CTG GAC GAG TTG
Ala Asn Trp Asp Ala Ala Val Thr Trp Arg Val Asn Gly Thr Asp Leu Ala Pro Asp Leu Leu Asn
500     510     520     530     540     550     560
GGC TCT CAG CTG GTG CTC CAT GGC CTG GAA CTG GGC CAC AGT GGC CTC TAC GCC TGC TTC CAC
CCG AGA GTC GAC CAC GAG GTA CCG GAC CTT GAC CCG GTG TCA CCG GAG ATG CCG ACG AAG GTG
Gly Ser Gln Leu Val Leu His Gly Leu Glu Leu Gly His Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ala Cys Phe His>

```

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

FIG. 2A

4/14

```

570      580      590      600      610      620
CGT GAC TCC TGG CAC CTG CGC CAC CAA GTC CTG CTG GGC TTG CCG CCG GAG CCT GTG
GCA CTG AGG ACC GTG GAC GCG GTG GTT CAG GAC GAC GTA CAC CCG AAC GGC GGC GCC CTC GGA CAC
Arg Asp Ser Trp His Leu Arg His Gln Val Leu Leu His Val Gly Leu Pro Pro Arg Glu Pro Val
630      640      650      660      670      680      690
CTC AGC TGC CGC TCC AAC ACT TAC CCC AAG GGC TTC TAC TGC AGC TGG CAT CTG CCC ACC CCC
GAG TCG ACG GCG AGG TTG TGA ATG GGG TTC CCG AAG ATG ACG TCG ACC GTA GAC GGC TGG GGG
Leu Ser Cys Arg Ser Asn Thr Tyr Pro Lys Gly Phe Tyr Cys Ser Trp His Leu Pro Thr Pro>

700      710      720      730      740      750
ACC TAC ATT CCC AAC ACC TTC AAT GTG ACT GTG CTG CAT GGC TCC AAA ATT ATG GTC TGT GAG AAG
TGG ATG TAA GGG TTG TGG AAG TTA CAC TGA CAC GAC GTA CCG AGG TTT TAA TAC CAG ACA CTC TTC
Thr Tyr Ile Pro Asn Thr Phe Asn Val Thr Val Leu His Gly Ser Lys Ile Met Val Cys Glu Lys
760      770      780      790      800      810
GAC CCG GCC CTC AAG AAC CCG TGC CAC ATT CGC TAC ATG CAC CTG TTC TCC ACC ATC AAG TAC
CTG GGT CCG GAG TTC TTG GCG ACG GTG TAA GCG ATG TAC GTG GAC AAG AGG TGG TAG TTC ATG
Asp Pro Ala Leu Lys Asn Arg Cys His Ile Arg Tyr Met His Leu Phe Ser Thr Ile Lys Try>

820      830      840      850      860      870      880
AAG GTC TCC ATA AGT GTC AGC AAT GCC CTG GGC CAC AAT GCC ACA GCT ATC ACC TTT GAC GAG TTC
TTC CAG AGG TAT TCA CAG TCG TTA CCG GAC CCG GTG TTA CCG TGT CGA TAG TGG AAA CTG CTC AAG
Lys Val Ser Ile Ser Val Ser Asn Ala Leu Gly His Asn Ala Thr Ala Ile Thr Phe Asp Glu Phe
890      900      910      920      930      940
ACC ATT GTG AAG CCT GAT CCT CCA GAA AAT GTG GTA GCC CCG CCA GTG CCC AGC AAC CCT CGC
TGG TAA CAC TTC GGA CTA GGA GGT CTT TTA CAC CAT CCG GCC GGT CAC GGC TCG TTG GGA GCG
Thr Ile Val Lys Pro Asp Pro Pro Glu Asn Val Val Ala Arg Pro Val Pro Ser Asn Pro Arg>

950      960      970      980      990      1000      1010
CGG CTG GAG GTG ACG TGG CAG ACC CCC TCG ACC TGG CCT GAC CCT GAG TCT TTT CCT CTC AAG TTC
GCC GAC CTC CAC TGC ACC GTC ACC TGG GGG AGC TGG ACC GGA CTG GGA CTC AGA AAA GGA GAG TTC AAG
Arg Leu Glu Val Thr Trp Gln Thr Pro Ser Thr Trp Pro Asp Pro Glu Ser Phe Pro Leu Lys Phe

```

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

FIG.2B

5/14

1020 1030 1040 1050 1060 1070  
 TTT CTG CGC TAC CGA CCC CTC ATC CTG GAC CAG TGG CAG CAT GTG GAG CTG TCC GAC GGC ACA  
 AAA GAC GCG ATG GCT GGG GAG TAG GAC CTG GTC ACC GTC GTA CAC CTC GAC AGG CTG CCG TGT  
 Phe Leu Arg Tyr Arg Pro Leu Ile Leu Asp Gln Trp Gln His Val Glu Leu Ser Asp Gly Thr>  
 1080 1090 1100 1110 1120 1130 1140  
 GCA CAC ACC ATC ACA GAT GCC TAC GCC GGG AAG GAG TAC ATT ATC CAG GTG GCA GCC AAG GAC AAT  
 CGT GTG TGG TAG TGT CTA CGG ATG CGG CCC TTC CTC ATG TAA TAG GTC CAC CGT CCG TTC CTG TTA  
 Ala His Thr Ile Thr Asp Ala Tyr Ala Gly Lys Glu Tyr Ile Ile Gln Val Ala Ala Lys Asp Asn  
 1150 1160 1170 1180 1190 1200  
 GAG ATT GGG ACA TGG AGT GAC TGG AGC GTA GCC GGC CAC GCT ACG CCC TGG ACT GAG GAA CCG  
 CTC TAA CCC TGT ACC TCA CTG ACC TCG CAT CGG CGG GTG CGA TGC GGG ACC TGA CTC CTT GGC  
 Glu Ile Gly Thr Trp Ser Asp Trp Ser Val Ala Ala His Ala Thr Pro Trp Thr Glu Glu Pro>  
 1210 1220 1230 1240 1250 1260 1270  
 CGA CAC CTC ACC ACG GAG GCC GCT GCG GAG ACC ACG ACC ACC ACC AGC TCC CTG GCA CCC  
 GCT GTG GAG TGG TGC CTC CGG GTC CGA CGC CTC TGG TGC TGG TGG TGG TGG AGG GAC CGT GGG  
 Arg His Leu Thr Thr Glu Ala Gln Ala Ala Glu Thr Thr Thr Thr Ser Ser Leu Ala Pro  
 1280 1290 1300 1310 1320 1330  
 CCA CCT ACC ACG AAG ATC TGT GAC CCT GGG GAG CTG GGC AGC GGC GGG GGA CCC TGC GCA CCC  
 GGT GGA TGG TGC TTC TAG ACA CTG GGA CCC CTC GAC CCG TCG CCG CCC CCT GGG ACG CGT GGG  
 Pro Pro Thr Thr Lys Ile Cys Asp Pro Gly Glu Leu Gly Ser Gly Gly Pro Gys Ala Pro>  
 1340 1350 1360 1370 1380 1390 1400  
 TTC TTG GTC AGC GTC CCC ATC ACT CTG GCC CTG GCT GCC GCT GCC GCG ACT GCC AGC AGT CTC TTG  
 AAG AAC CAG TCG CAG GGG TAG TGA GAC CCG GAC CGA CGG CGA CGG CCG TGA CCG TCG TCA GAG AAC  
 Phe Leu Val Ser Val Pro Ile Thr Leu Ala Leu Ala Ala Ala Thr Ala Ser Ser Leu Leu  
 1410 1420 1430 1440 1450 1460 1470  
 ATC TGAGCC CGGCACCCCA TGAGGACATG CAGAGCACCT GCAGAGGAGC AGGAGGCCGG AGCTGAGCCT  
 TAG ACTCGG GCCGTGGGT ACTCCGTGAC GTCTCGTGGA CGTCTCCCTCG TCCTCCGGCC TCGACTCGGA  
 Ile>

FIG.2C

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

6/14

1480 GCAGACCCCG GTTCTATT TGCACACGGG CAGGAGGACC TTTTGCATTC TCTTCAGACA CAATTGTGG AGACCCCGGC 1550  
CGTCTGGGC CAAAGATAAA ACGTGTGCCC GTCTCTCTGG AAACGTAAG AGAAGTCTGT GTTAACACCC TCTGGGGCCG 1540  
1560 GGGCCCGGC CTGCCGCCCC CCAGCCCTGC CGCACCAGC T 1530  
CCCGGGCCCG GACGGGGG GTCGGGGACG GCGTGGTTCG A 1520  
1510  
1500  
1490  
1480

FIG.2D

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

7/14

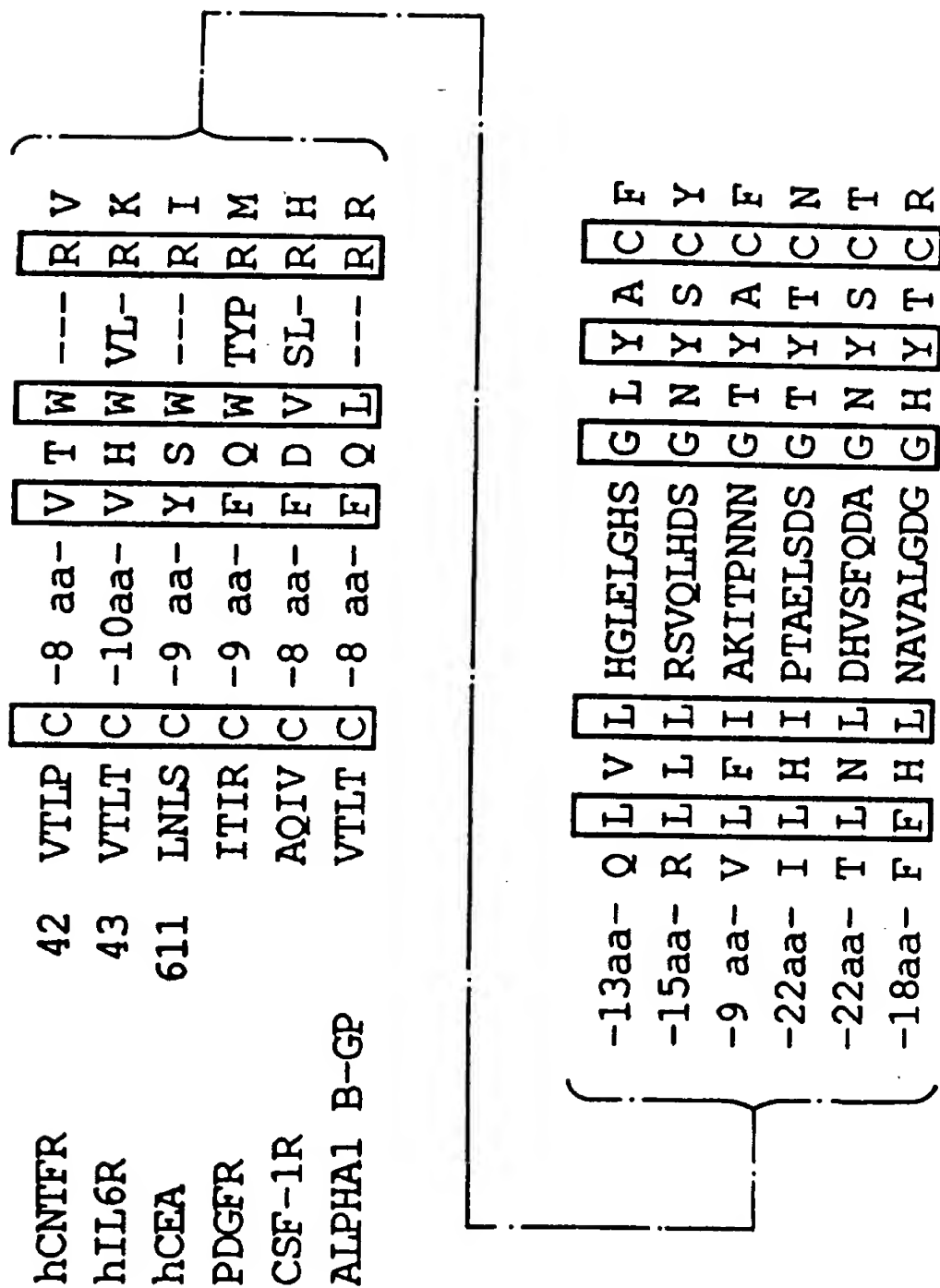


FIG. 3A

8/14

hCNTFR	116	C	RSNTYPKGSY	C	S	W	-24aa-	C	-9 aa-	C	-33aa-	FDEFTI	V
hIL6R	121	C	FRKSPLSNVV	C	E	W	-30aa-	C	-10aa-	C	-32aa-	FQCGGI	L
rPRLR	31	C	RSPD-KETFT	C	W	W	-26aa-	C	-10aa-	C	-33aa-	VDVTYI	V
mEPOR	52	C	FTQR-LEDLV	C	F	W	-25aa-	C	-15aa-	C	-29aa-	IHINEV	V
hIL2R	36	C	FYNS-RANIS	C	V	W	-25aa-	C	-11aa-	C	-37aa-	FKPFEN	L
mIL4R	34	C	FSDY-IRTST	C	E	W	-28aa-	C	-11aa-	C	-28aa-	FSPSGN	V
hGM-CSFR	126	C	FIYN-ADIMN	C	T	W	-26aa-	C	-12aa-	C	-31aa-	LDTKKI	E

KPDP	P	EN	V	V	VARPVPSPRRLE	V	T	W	-53aa-	V	AAK----	DNEIGT	WS	D	WS
QDP	P	AN	I	I	TVTAVARNPRWLS	V	T	W	-50aa-	V	VQLRAQEEFGQGE	WS	WS	E	WS
EPEP	P	RN	L	L	TLEVQQLKDKKTY	L	-	W	-55aa-	V	QTRCKPDH---	GY	WS	R	WS
LLDA	P	AG	L	L	-LARRAEEGSHVV	L	R	W	-53aa-	V	PARMA-EPSFSGF	WS	WS	A	WS
RLMA	P	IS	L	L	QV-VHVEHRCN-	I	S	W	-55aa-	V	RVKPL--QGEFTT	WS	WS	P	WS
KPLA	P	DN	L	L	TLHTNVSD-EWL-	L	T	W	-57aa-	V	RVRS---QILTGT	WS	WS	E	WS
RFNP	P	SN	V	V	TV---RCNTHCL	V	R	W	-56aa-	V	KIRAA-D-VRIIN	WS	WS	S	WS

FIG. 3B

9/14

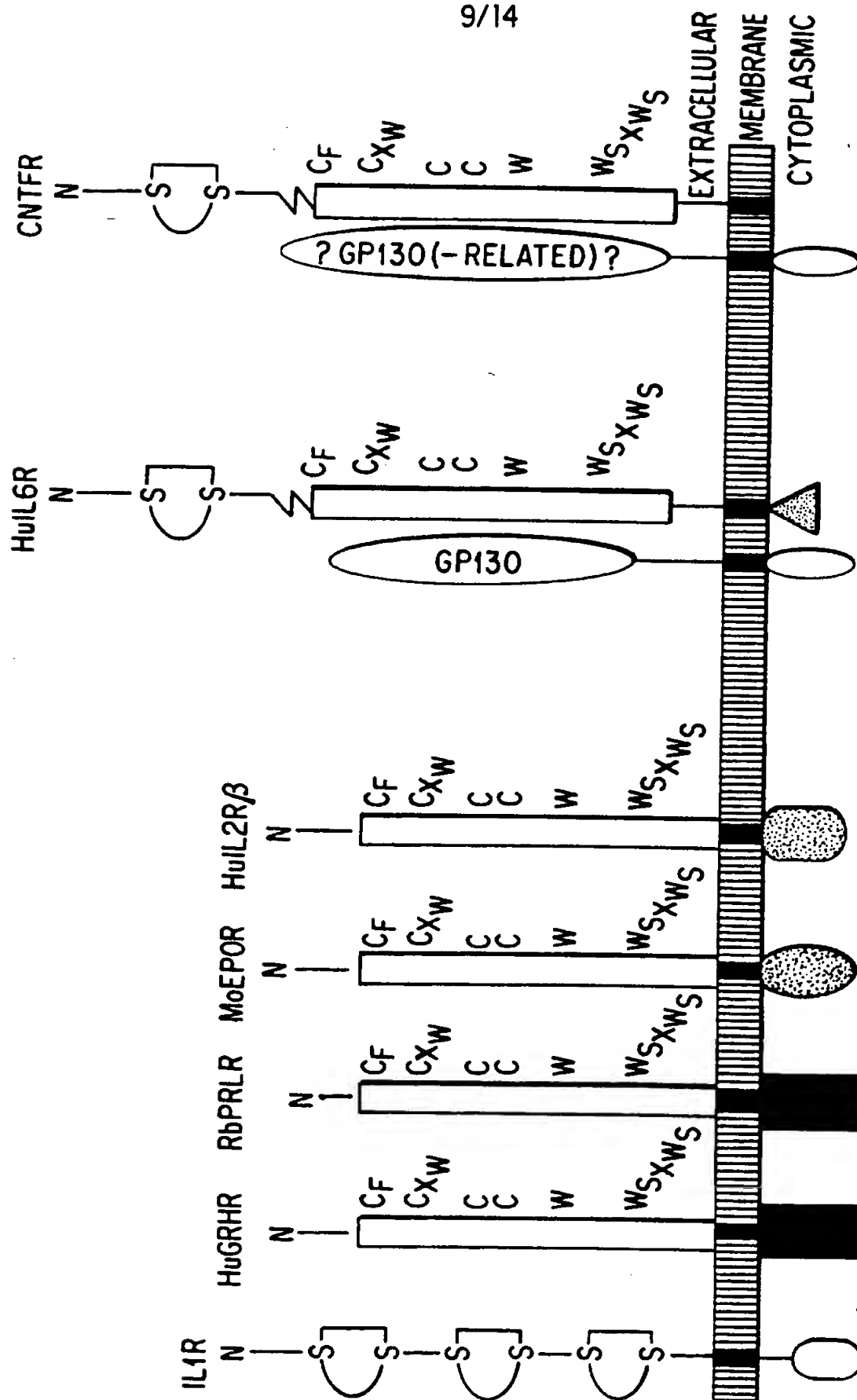
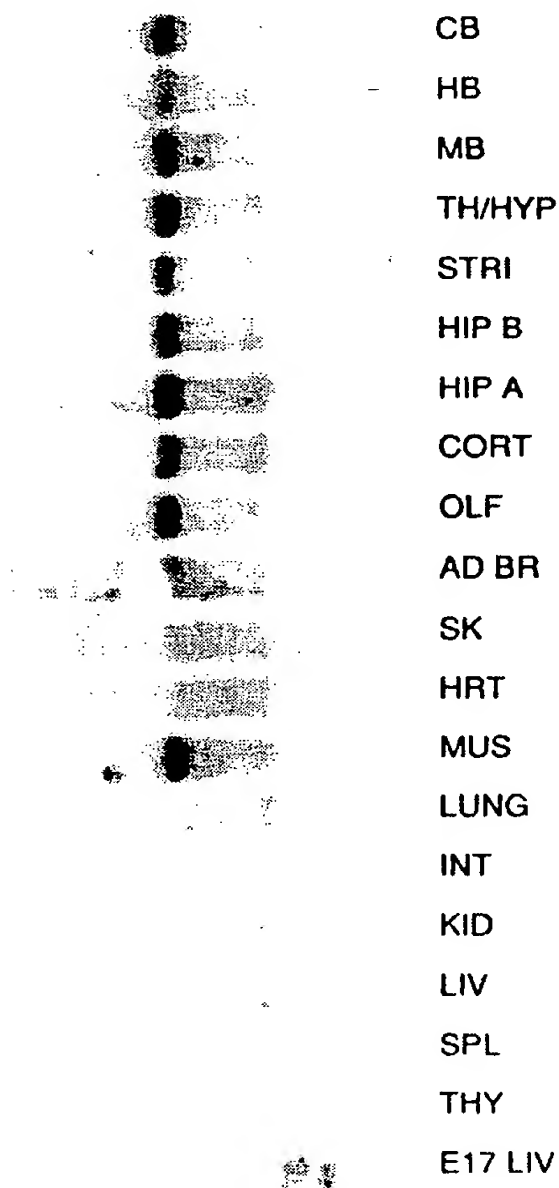


FIG. 4

10/14

**FIG. 5**

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



11/14

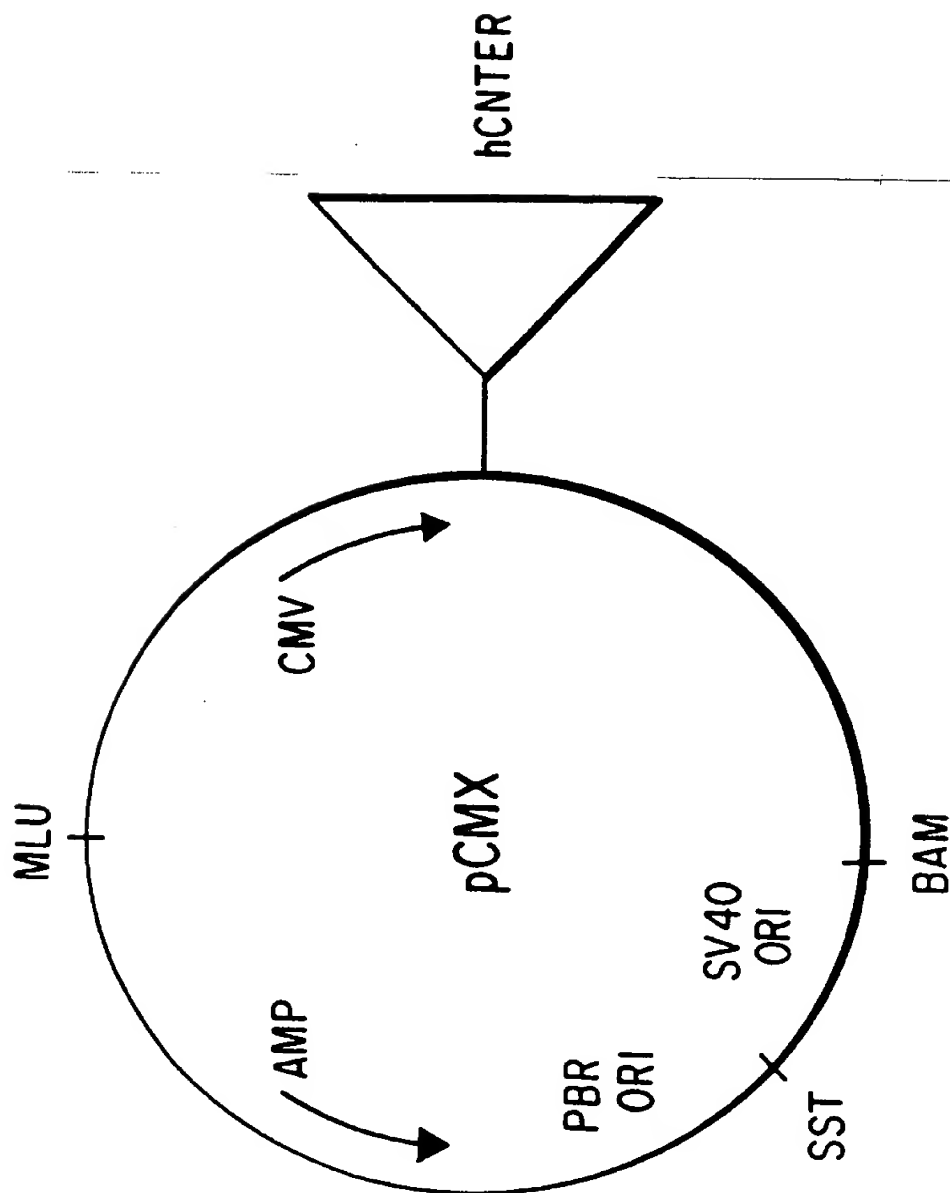


FIG. 6

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

12/14

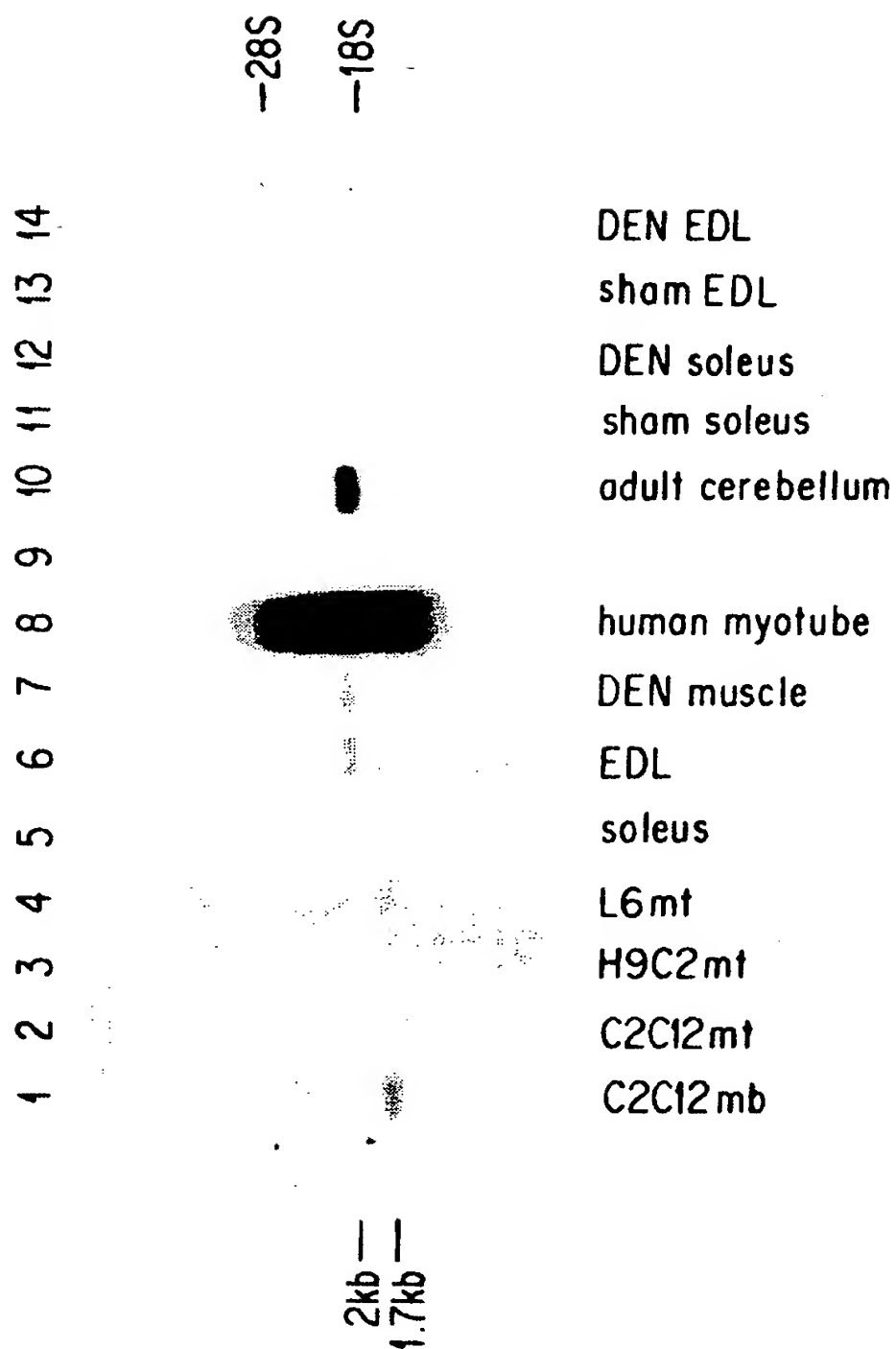


FIG. 7

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

13/14

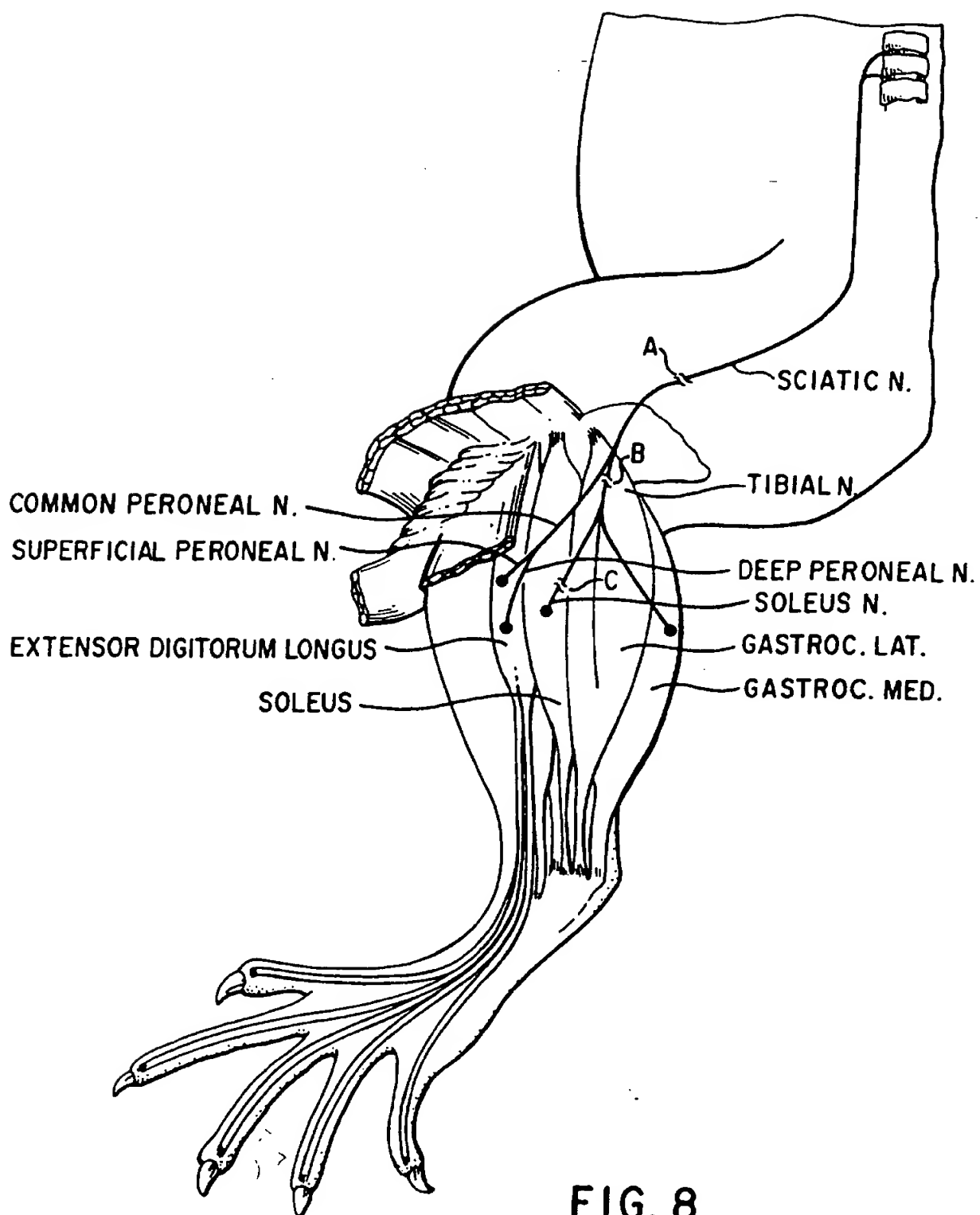


FIG. 8

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

14/14

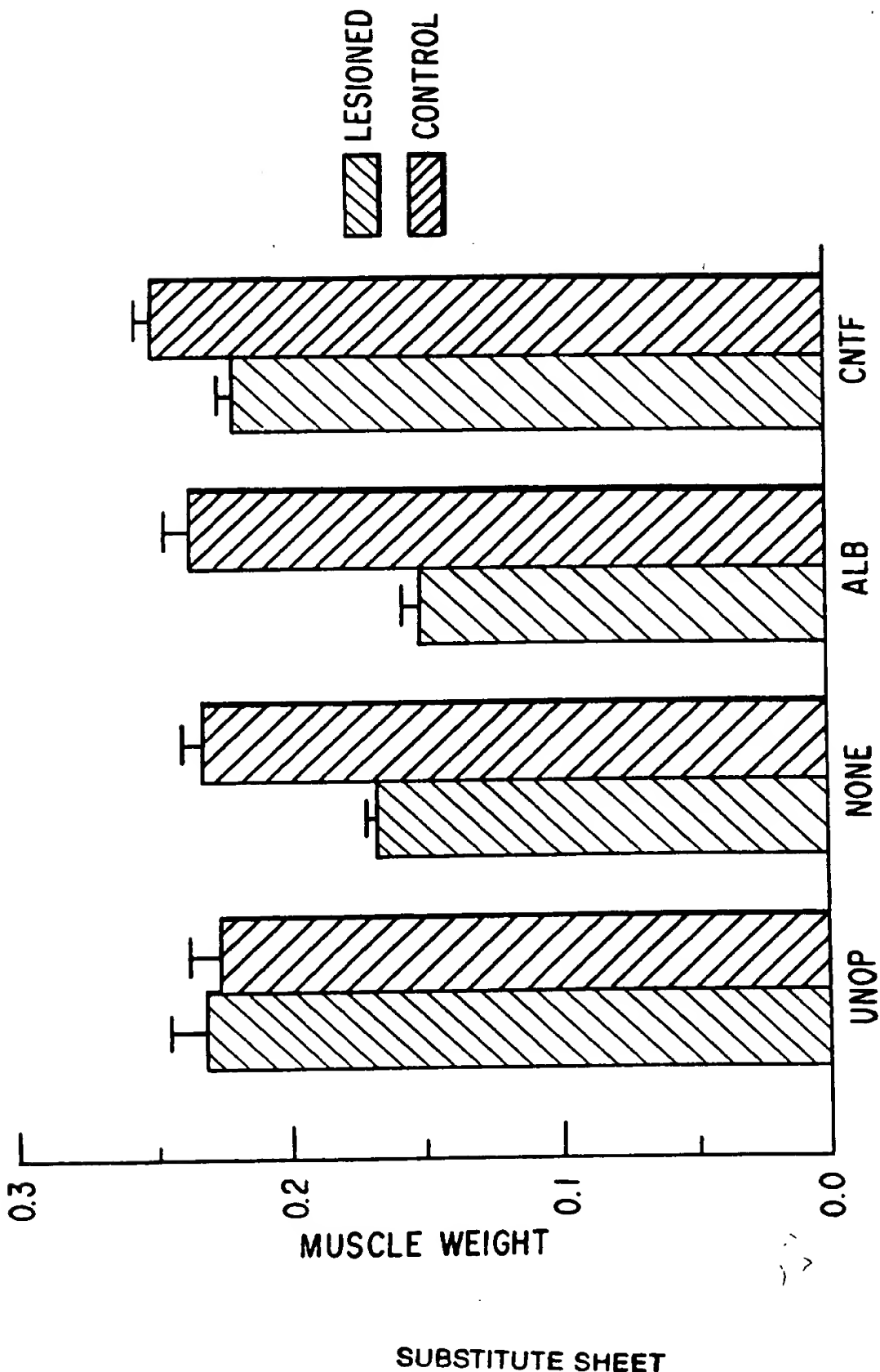


FIG. 9

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US91/03896

<b>I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b> (if several classification symbols apply, indicate all) <sup>6</sup> According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC IPC(5): C12Q 1/68; G01N 33/53 U.S. CL.: 435/6, 7.1																				
<b>II. FIELDS SEARCHED</b> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;">Minimum Documentation Searched <sup>7</sup></div> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th style="width: 20%;">Classification System</th> <th style="width: 80%;">Classification Symbols</th> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">U.S.</td> <td>435/6, 7.1, 7.2, 7.21, 7.92, 69.1, 91, 172.3, 240.1, 320.1, 971; 436/501, 86, 811; 514/44, 2; 530/350, 359, 806, 812, 839; 935/9, 11, 12, 23, 71, 72, 78, 99, 102, 110; 536/27; 424/88</td> </tr> </table> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;">Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched <sup>8</sup></div>			Classification System	Classification Symbols	U.S.	435/6, 7.1, 7.2, 7.21, 7.92, 69.1, 91, 172.3, 240.1, 320.1, 971; 436/501, 86, 811; 514/44, 2; 530/350, 359, 806, 812, 839; 935/9, 11, 12, 23, 71, 72, 78, 99, 102, 110; 536/27; 424/88														
Classification System	Classification Symbols																			
U.S.	435/6, 7.1, 7.2, 7.21, 7.92, 69.1, 91, 172.3, 240.1, 320.1, 971; 436/501, 86, 811; 514/44, 2; 530/350, 359, 806, 812, 839; 935/9, 11, 12, 23, 71, 72, 78, 99, 102, 110; 536/27; 424/88																			
<b>III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT <sup>9</sup></b> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th style="width: 10%;">Category <sup>10</sup></th> <th style="width: 70%;">Citation of Document, <sup>11</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>12</sup></th> <th style="width: 20%;">Relevant to Claim No. <sup>13</sup></th> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">T</td> <td>Science, Volume 253, issued 05 July 1991, <b>DAVIS ET AL.</b>, "The Receptor for Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor", pages 59-63, see entire document.</td> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">1-56</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">X</td> <td>The Journal of Neuroscience, Volume 9, Number 10, issued October 1989, <b>HALVORSEN ET AL.</b>, "Specific Down-Regulation of the a-Bungarotoxin Binding Component on Chick Autonomic Neurons by Ciliary Neurotrophic factor", pages 3673-3680, see especially the abstract.</td> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">8,13,45</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;"><u>X</u> A</td> <td>Science, Volume 204, issued 29 June 1979, <b>ADLER ET AL.</b>, "Cholinergic Neurotrophic Factors: Intraocular Distribution of Trophic Activity for Ciliary Neurons" pages 1434-1436, see entire document.</td> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">8,13,18 1-7,9-12, 14-17,19-56</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;"><u>X</u> Y</td> <td>Nature, Volume 342, issued 21 December 1989, <b>STOCKLI AL.</b>, "Molecular cloning, expression and regional distribution of rat ciliary neurotrophic factor", pages 920-923, see especially the abstract and first paragraph thereafter.</td> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">8,13,18 50-55</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="text-align: right; padding-top: 20px;">(cont.)</td> </tr> </table>			Category <sup>10</sup>	Citation of Document, <sup>11</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>12</sup>	Relevant to Claim No. <sup>13</sup>	T	Science, Volume 253, issued 05 July 1991, <b>DAVIS ET AL.</b> , "The Receptor for Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor", pages 59-63, see entire document.	1-56	X	The Journal of Neuroscience, Volume 9, Number 10, issued October 1989, <b>HALVORSEN ET AL.</b> , "Specific Down-Regulation of the a-Bungarotoxin Binding Component on Chick Autonomic Neurons by Ciliary Neurotrophic factor", pages 3673-3680, see especially the abstract.	8,13,45	<u>X</u> A	Science, Volume 204, issued 29 June 1979, <b>ADLER ET AL.</b> , "Cholinergic Neurotrophic Factors: Intraocular Distribution of Trophic Activity for Ciliary Neurons" pages 1434-1436, see entire document.	8,13,18 1-7,9-12, 14-17,19-56	<u>X</u> Y	Nature, Volume 342, issued 21 December 1989, <b>STOCKLI AL.</b> , "Molecular cloning, expression and regional distribution of rat ciliary neurotrophic factor", pages 920-923, see especially the abstract and first paragraph thereafter.	8,13,18 50-55	(cont.)		
Category <sup>10</sup>	Citation of Document, <sup>11</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>12</sup>	Relevant to Claim No. <sup>13</sup>																		
T	Science, Volume 253, issued 05 July 1991, <b>DAVIS ET AL.</b> , "The Receptor for Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor", pages 59-63, see entire document.	1-56																		
X	The Journal of Neuroscience, Volume 9, Number 10, issued October 1989, <b>HALVORSEN ET AL.</b> , "Specific Down-Regulation of the a-Bungarotoxin Binding Component on Chick Autonomic Neurons by Ciliary Neurotrophic factor", pages 3673-3680, see especially the abstract.	8,13,45																		
<u>X</u> A	Science, Volume 204, issued 29 June 1979, <b>ADLER ET AL.</b> , "Cholinergic Neurotrophic Factors: Intraocular Distribution of Trophic Activity for Ciliary Neurons" pages 1434-1436, see entire document.	8,13,18 1-7,9-12, 14-17,19-56																		
<u>X</u> Y	Nature, Volume 342, issued 21 December 1989, <b>STOCKLI AL.</b> , "Molecular cloning, expression and regional distribution of rat ciliary neurotrophic factor", pages 920-923, see especially the abstract and first paragraph thereafter.	8,13,18 50-55																		
(cont.)																				
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p><sup>14</sup> Special categories of cited documents: <sup>15</sup></p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p> </div> <div style="width: 50%;"> <p>"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.</p> <p>"&amp;" document member of the same patent family</p> </div> </div>																				
<b>IV. CERTIFICATION</b> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; padding: 5px;">           Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search   <div style="text-align: center;">30 September 1991</div> </td> <td style="width: 50%; padding: 5px;">           Date of Mailing of this International Search Report   <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.2em;">10 OCT 1991</div> </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; padding: 5px;">           International Searching Authority   <div style="text-align: center;">ISA/US</div> </td> <td style="width: 50%; padding: 5px;">           Signature of Authorized Officer  <div style="text-align: center;">              Ardin Marschel (vsh)           </div> </td> </tr> </table>			Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search  <div style="text-align: center;">30 September 1991</div>	Date of Mailing of this International Search Report  <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.2em;">10 OCT 1991</div>	International Searching Authority  <div style="text-align: center;">ISA/US</div>	Signature of Authorized Officer <div style="text-align: center;">              Ardin Marschel (vsh)           </div>														
Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search  <div style="text-align: center;">30 September 1991</div>	Date of Mailing of this International Search Report  <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.2em;">10 OCT 1991</div>																			
International Searching Authority  <div style="text-align: center;">ISA/US</div>	Signature of Authorized Officer <div style="text-align: center;">              Ardin Marschel (vsh)           </div>																			

III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET)		
Category *	Citation of Document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No
<u>X</u> <u>Y</u>	Science, Volume 246, issued 24 November 1989, <b>LIN ET AL.</b> , "Purification, Cloning and Expression of Ciliary Neurotrophic Factor (CNTF)", pages 1023-1025, see especially the first paragraph after the abstract.	<u>8,13,18</u> 50-55
P,Y	US, A, 4,997,929 ( <b>COLLINS ET AL.</b> ) 05 March 1991, see especially column 2, lines 22-42.	8,13,15,18, 33,50-55
P,Y	US, A, 5,011,914 ( <b>COLLINS ET AL.</b> ) 30 April 1991, see especially column 2, lines 21-39.	8,13,15,18,
P,A	US, A, 5,017,375 ( <b>APPEL ET AL.</b> ) 21 May 1991, see the entire document.	1-56
A	US, A, 4,923,696 ( <b>APPEL ET AL.</b> ) 08 May 1990, see the entire document.	1-56